

TAMARA M. GREEN



SIXTH EDITION

# THE GREEK & LATIN ROOTS OF ENGLISH



*The* GREEK & LATIN  
ROOTS *of* ENGLISH



S I X T H   E D I T I O N

*The* GREEK & LATIN  
ROOTS *of* ENGLISH

*Tamara M. Green*

ROWMAN & LITTLEFIELD

*Lanham • Boulder • New York • London*

Executive Editor: Charles Harmon  
Associate Editor: Erinn Slanina  
Production Editor: Kellie Hagan  
Interior Designer: Andrea Reider  
Cover Designer: Sally Rinehart

Published by Rowman & Littlefield  
An imprint of The Rowman & Littlefield Publishing Group, Inc.  
4501 Forbes Boulevard, Suite 200, Lanham, Maryland 20706  
[www.rowman.com](http://www.rowman.com)

6 Tinworth Street, London, SE11 5AL, United Kingdom

Copyright © 2020 by The Rowman & Littlefield Publishing Group, Inc.

*All rights reserved.* No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any electronic or mechanical means, including information storage and retrieval systems, without written permission from the publisher, except by a reviewer who may quote passages in a review.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Information Available

### **Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Name: Green, Tamara M., author.

Title: The Greek & Latin roots of English / Tamara M. Green.

Other titles: The Greek and Latin roots of English

Description: Sixth edition. | Lanham : Rowman & Littlefield Publishing, [2020] | Includes bibliographical references. | Summary: "The sixth edition expands the introduction to each chapter, and contains revised exercises in each chapter that reinforce and expand both vocabulary and analytical skills developed in previous chapters. The sixth edition also features expanded Latin and Greek alphabetical vocabulary lists, analytic exercises and other reader-friendly updates"—Provided by publisher.


Identifiers: LCCN 2019051321 (print) | LCCN 2019051322 (ebook) | ISBN 9781538128633 (paperback ; alk. paper) | ISBN 9781538128640 (electronic)

Subjects: LCSH: English language—Foreign elements—Greek. | English language—Foreign elements—Latin. | Greek language—Influence on English. | Latin language—Influence on English. | English language—Roots.

Classification: LCC PE1582.G6 G74 2020 (print) | LCC PE1582.G6 (ebook) | DDC 422/.48—dc23

LC record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2019051321>

LC ebook record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2019051322>

™ The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992.

# Contents

## **Preface ix**

### **1 A Polyglot Stew (Or Food for Thought) 1**

*What Shall We Have for Dinner?* 2

*Vocabulary* 3

*How and Where Do We Eat?* 5

### **2 Language and History 7**

*Language Families* 8

*The Branches of the Indo-European Tree* 11

*A Brief History of English* 13

*An Outline of the History of the English Language* 20

*And What Is More* 21

*Some Useful Terms* 22

*Exercises* 25

### **3 How Latin Works 29**

*Inflected Languages* 30

*Latin Nouns and Adjectives* 32

*Finding the Stem of a Latin Noun or Adjective* 33

*Latin Verbs* 35

*Conjugations* 35

*Finding the Stem of a Latin Verb* 36

*Some Very Useful Latin Verbs* 38

*Exercises* 41

- 4 Latin into English 47**  
     *Forming New Words* 48  
     *Adjective-Forming Suffixes Used with Latin Noun Stems* 48  
     *Noun-Forming Suffixes Used with Latin Nouns and Adjectives* 49  
     *Diminutive-Forming Suffixes with Latin Nouns* 50  
     *Nouns and Adjectives Formed from Latin Verbs* 50  
     *Verbal Suffixes* 53  
     *Verbal Learned Borrowings* 54  
     *Exercises* 57
- 5 How Greek Works 65**  
     *The Greek Alphabet* 66  
     *Rules for Transliterating Greek Words into English* 67  
     *Cognates* 68  
     *Exercises* 71
- 6 Greek into English 73**  
     *Greek Suffixes* 74  
     *Exercises* 77
- 7 Latin and Greek Prefixes 81**  
     *Latin Prepositions* 82  
     *Greek Prepositions* 84  
     *Prefixes Derived from Greek and Latin Adjectives and Adverbs* 85  
     *Exercises* 89
- 8 Latin and Greek Numbers 95**  
     *Countdown* 96  
     *Latin Numbers* 96  
     *Greek Numbers* 99  
     *Exercises* 101
- 9 Government and Politics 105**  
     *Greek Politics* 106  
     *Roman Politics* 107  
     *Governmental Bureaucracy* 108  
     *The Law* 112  
     *War and Peace* 115  
     *Exercises* 117

**10 Psychology 123***Modern Theories of Psychology* 124*Ancient Psychological Theory* 125*Love and Marriage* 126*States of Feeling* 128*The Four Humors* 129*Star Wars* 130*Science and the Human Mind* 131*Exercises* 133**11 The Social Sciences 137***Theory and Practice* 138*Anthropology* 138*Sociology* 139*Economics* 140*Exercises* 145**12 Science and Mathematics 149***Ancient and Modern Science* 150*The Biological Sciences* 151*Astronomy* 157*Chemistry* 160*Physics* 163*Geology* 166*Paleontology* 167*Geography* 167*Meteorology* 169*Mathematics* 170*Islamic Science* 173*Exercises* 175**13 Human Biology and Medicine 183***Modern Medicine and Ancient Terminology* 184*The Human Body* 184*Medical Specialties* 186*Diagnosis and Treatment* 188*To Sleep, Perchance to Dream* 189*Odds and Ends* 191*Exercises* 195



<b>14</b>	<b>It's an Academic Question</b>	<b>201</b>
	<i>Greek and Roman Education</i>	202
	<i>Books and Libraries</i>	203
	<i>Exercises</i>	207
<b>15</b>	<b>The Classical Influence</b>	<b>211</b>
	<i>Europe and the Classical Heritage</i>	212
	<i>The Fine Arts</i>	212
	<i>City Planning</i>	213
	<i>Literature</i>	215
	<i>Theater</i>	215
	<i>Music</i>	217
	<i>Athletics, Competition, and Excellence</i>	219
	<i>Exercises</i>	223
<b>16</b>	<b>Myth, Religion, and Philosophy</b>	<b>229</b>
	<i>Greek and Roman Religion and Myth</i>	230
	<i>The Greek and Roman Gods</i>	230
	<i>The Calendar</i>	232
	<i>Other Times . . .</i>	233
	<i>Other Places . . .</i>	233
	<i>Troy</i>	238
	<i>Ancient Peoples and Places</i>	240
	<i>Philosophy</i>	242
	<i>The Language of Christianity</i>	244
	<i>Exercises</i>	245
<b>17</b>	<b>Lingua Latina Etiam Vivit (The Latin Language Still Lives!)</b>	<b>249</b>
	<i>Latin Proverbs</i>	250
	<i>Measurements of Time</i>	250
	<i>Measures and Relationships</i>	251
	<i>Speech and Language</i>	251
	<i>Drama and Theater</i>	251
	<i>People, Places, and Things</i>	252
	<i>Latin Abbreviations and Words used in Scholarly Research and Writing</i>	253
	<i>Exercises</i>	255
	<b>Greek Vocabulary</b>	<b>259</b>
	<b>Latin Vocabulary</b>	<b>267</b>
	<b>About the Author</b>	<b>277</b>

# *Preface*

“Language is a city to the building of which every human being brought a stone.” Ralph Waldo Emerson’s words are a recognition that the development of language and the ways in which we use it have been, in large measure, historically and culturally determined. But it is also true that not only do individuals and cultures shape language but language shapes us: the way we speak and what we say define us and allow us to articulate our world view. Ideas take on life only when we can give them expression, and one of the ways by which we do this is through our ability to use language. The more adept we are at this, the greater are our opportunities to explore and create and interpret the variety of our experiences.

Because language is a social product, it is constantly changing not only structurally but in the very meaning of words. No language perhaps offers a better opportunity to understand linguistic change than English, especially in the realm of vocabulary. English has absorbed vocabulary from other languages, but as a result of both the accidents of history and the great esteem in which ancient Greek and Roman culture were held in the European tradition, over 60 percent of all English words have a Greek or Latin root; in the vocabulary of the sciences and technology, the figure rises to over 90 percent. Thus, through the study of the Greek and Latin roots of English, students not only can expand their knowledge of English vocabulary but come to understand the ways in which the history of the English language has shaped our perception of the world around us.

The approach of this text is thematic: vocabulary is organized into various topics, including politics and government, psychology, medicine and the biological sciences, literature, ancient culture, and religion and philosophy. Unlike those textbooks that treat Latin and Greek roots separately, these lessons present the two vocabularies as an organic whole. Thus the emphasis is placed on language and the way in which it has developed and changed rather than on single words or even groups of words.

The exercises at the end of each chapter are cumulative, reinforcing both vocabulary already learned and analytical skills developed in previous lessons. In addition to teaching vocabulary skills, the text has another, perhaps more subtle, aim. It is hoped that through the study of the Greek and Latin roots of English, students will begin to learn the pleasures (and pitfalls) of language study.

The original development of the materials for this text was made possible by a grant to Hunter College from the National Endowment for the Humanities.

**NEW MATERIAL IN THE SIXTH EDITION**

The sixth edition has retained the organizational and thematic approach of the earlier editions. New material and exercises have been added to all chapters.

**HOW TO USE THIS TEXT**

1. In the vocabulary, both the nominative and genitive cases are given for all Latin nouns and adjectives. The principal parts of Latin verbs are also given.
2. An English word followed by Greek in parentheses indicates that the word is Greek in origin.
3. Because most words in English that are derived from Greek are learned borrowings, the genitive case of a noun or adjective is rarely cited unless the compound form of the word is derived from that case.
4. Vocabulary words are sometimes repeated in different chapters when necessary.
5. Vocabulary words are listed in the order in which they appear in the narrative text.

**SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS USED**

<i>Symbol or Abbreviation</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
=	means in English
>	from which is derived
<	derived from
cf.	compare
e.g.	for example

**I N S T R U C T O R ' S   M A N U A L**

An instructor's manual is available to adopters of this text.<sup>1</sup> It contains

- answers to all the exercises in the text
- quizzes on each chapter
- two final examinations
- answers to all quizzes and final examinations
- supplementary exercises, including answers
- a list of English derivatives for almost all Latin and Greek vocabulary words

Instructors can get the manual by emailing a request to [textbooks@rowman.com](mailto:textbooks@rowman.com).

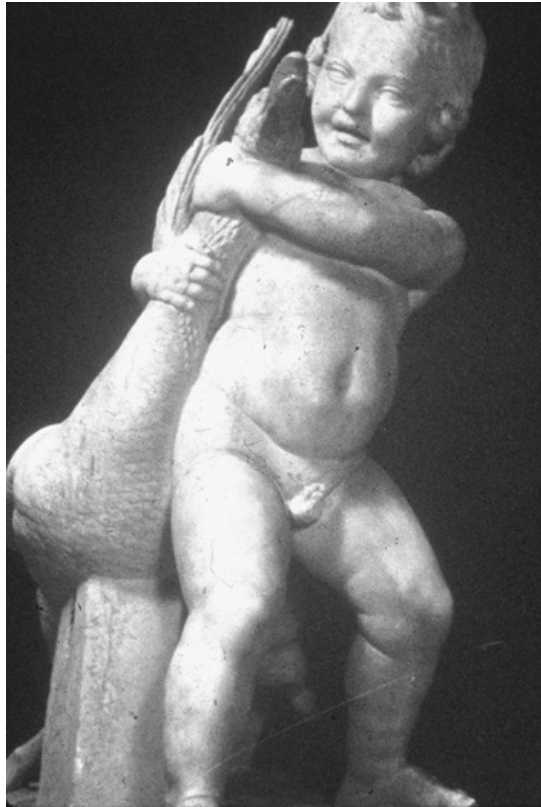
---

1. Chapter 13 ("Human Biology and Medicine II") in previous editions has been moved to the instructor's manual.



# A POLYGLOT STEW<sup>1</sup>

*(Or Food for Thought)*



Child with a goose. Museo Capitolino, Rome.

*“When you cook a crane, make sure that the head does not touch the water but is outside it.  
When it has been cooked, wrap it in a warm cloth and pull its head.”*

—APICIUS (first-century CE Roman gourmet)

---

1. A *polyglot* is someone who speaks many languages. You will learn the roots of this word very shortly.

If we are what we eat, the American people are the most cosmopolitan nation in the world. Just as the English language is a mixture of Germanic, Latin, and Greek roots with a heavy seasoning of the Romance languages, just a dash of Native American, African, and Caribbean, and a sprinkling of Asian vocabulary, so does our diet reflect the various linguistic ingredients that go into the melting pot of American cuisine.

The Normans conquered England in 1066 CE and introduced, via French, Latin-based names for various foods. Nevertheless, although English tastes and vocabulary were about to be expanded, the Germanic contribution to the English *menu* did not disappear. For example, Middle English *mete* made peace with the Old French *boef*, thus allowing both meat and beef on the dinner table, while the Germanic-based *chicken* nested quite comfortably with the French *poulet*. And if the English seemed to have lost their *appetite* after the Norman Conquest, the French tempted their *palates* with the introduction of such foods as *salmon*, *rice*, and *carrots*. French *pain*, however, never replaced Old English *bread*. Perhaps the English found that too painful to contemplate.

The Normans may have introduced the English to the finer points of French cookery, but the spread of the British Empire introduced the English language to a host of new tastes from Asia, Africa, and North America. In turn, the extraordinary ethnic diversity of the United States has added its own linguistic flavors to American cuisine.

### WHAT SHALL WE HAVE FOR DINNER?

We can eat geographically, as it were, starting off with some Latin-based *wine*, Gaelic *whiskey*, or Russian *vodka*. The German cities of *Hamburg* and *Frankfurt* give us two staples of the American diet, whose flavor we can enhance with Chinese *ketchup*, French *mustard*, or a Dutch *pickle*. Or would you prefer Italian *pasta*: *linguini*, perhaps, or *spaghetti*, topped with some *cheese* from *Parma*, Italy? If we want to add a little spice to our lives, we can always order a *curry* at our local Indian *restaurant* or call the neighborhood *pizzeria*.

Of course, a well-balanced diet needs a French *salad* filled with native and imported *vegetables*: the Native Americans of North and South America can provide *tomatoes*, *potatoes*, *squash*, and *avocados*, while the Arabs will contribute *spinach*. We can add a classical touch with *onions*, *lettuce*, and *peas*, and even the lowly *radish* also has a Latin root.

And what is dinner without *dessert*? Some *fruit*, perhaps: an *orange* from Persia, or a *banana* from West Africa, or a much-traveled *apricot*, which passed from Latin into Arabic and then returned into Portuguese before making its way onto the English menu. If we crave something sweeter, however, what could be more American than

*apple pie*? Or would you prefer some Central American *chocolate*, German *cake* or a *pretzel*, or perhaps a Dutch *cookie*? And you can wash it all down with some *coffee* from Turkey or all the *tea* in China.

## VOCABULARY

<i>Food</i>	<i>Derived from What Language?</i>	<i>Meaning in Original Language</i>
apple	Old English <sup>2</sup>	<i>aeppel</i> = apple
apricot	Portuguese	the original form of the word in English is <i>apricock</i> , from the Portuguese <i>albricoque</i> , which in turn was derived from the Arabic <i>al-birquq</i> <sup>3</sup>
avocado	Spanish	<i>aguacate</i> , in turn derived from the Nahuatl <sup>4</sup> <i>ahuacatl</i> (testicle)
beef	Old French	<i>boef</i> , in turn derived from the Latin <i>bos</i> , <i>bovis</i> = cow
bread	Old English	<i>bread</i> , but also see the Latin <i>panis</i> , from which are derived the French <i>pain</i> , Italian <i>pane</i> , and Spanish <i>pan</i>
cake	Middle English	<i>kake</i> ; cf. the Icelandic <i>kaka</i> , German <i>kuchen</i> , and Dutch <i>coek</i> . <i>Cookie</i> is the diminutive form of <i>coek</i> .
carrot	French	<i>carotte</i> , derived from the Latin <i>carota</i>
cheese	Latin	<i>caseus</i> = cheese
chicken	Middle English	<i>chiken</i>
chocolate	Nahuatl	<i>chocolatl</i>
coffee	Turkish	<i>kahve</i> , in turn derived from the Arabic <i>qahwah</i> cf. the French <i>café</i> and American-Spanish <i>cafeteria</i>
curry	Tamil <sup>5</sup>	<i>kari</i> = sauce
dessert	French	derived from the French <i>desservir</i> = to clear the table
fruit	Latin	derived from the Latin <i>fructus</i> = enjoyment
lettuce	Latin	<i>lactuca</i> <sup>6</sup>
meat	Old English	<i>mete</i>
onion	Latin	<i>unio</i> = pearl

2. *Old* and *Middle*, when used to describe a language, represent an earlier form of the language.

3. Going around in circles! The Arabic word, however, was a transliteration of a Latin adjective, *prae-coquum* (early ripening), a term that could be applied to any fruit.

4. Nahuatl belongs to a group of indigenous languages spoken in Central America. It is recognized as one of the official languages of Mexico.

5. Tamil is one of more than twenty languages spoken in southern and eastern parts of India.

6. Believe it or not, this word is related to the Latin word *lac* (milk). See if you can discover why.



<i>Food</i>	<i>Derived from What Language?</i>	<i>Meaning in Original Language</i>
pasta	Latin	<i>pasta</i> = dough, in turn derived from the Greek <i>pastos</i> = sprinkled. Originally pasta was a kind of porridge sprinkled with salt.
pea	Latin	<i>pisum</i> , cf. the Italian <i>pisello</i> and French <i>pois</i>
pizza	Italian	derivation unclear but perhaps the Latin <i>placenta</i> = cake
potato	Spanish	<i>patata</i> , derived from the Arawak <sup>7</sup> <i>batata</i>
poultry	Middle French	<i>poulet</i> , derived from the Latin <i>pullus</i> = the young of any animal
pretzel	German	<i>bretzel</i> , derived from the Latin <i>bracellus</i> = bracelet
radish	Old English	<i>raedic</i> , derived from the Latin <i>radix</i> = root
rice	Old French	<i>ris</i> , derived from the Italian <i>riso</i> , in turn derived from the Greek <i>oryzon</i> = rice
salad	French	<i>salade</i> , derived from the Latin <i>salata</i> = salted
salmon	Latin	<i>salmo</i>
spaghetti	Italian	<i>spagetto</i> = thin cord, rope
spinach	Old Spanish	<i>espinaca</i> , derived from the Arabic <i>isfanakh</i>
squash	Narragansett (Native American)	<i>askutasquash</i> = thing eaten green
tea	Chinese (Amoy dialect)	<i>t'e</i> . The more common Chinese word is the Mandarin <i>ch'a</i> .
tomato	Spanish	<i>tomate</i> , derived from the Nahuatl <i>tomatl</i>
vegetable	Latin	derived from the Latin verb <i>vegeo</i> = grow
vodka	Russian	<i>voda</i> = water
whiskey	Gaelic	<i>usquebaugh</i> = water of life
wine	Latin	<i>vinum</i> , cf. the French <i>vin</i> and the Italian and Spanish <i>vino</i>

7. Arawak is one of the indigenous languages of the Caribbean.

**HOW AND WHERE DO WE EAT?**

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Derived from What Language?</i>	<i>Meaning in Original Language</i>
appetite	Latin	the Latin verb <i>appeto</i> = seek, desire
cuisine	French	kitchen, cookery; derived from the Latin <i>coquina</i> = kitchen
menu	French	detailed list, derived from the Latin <i>minutus</i> = small
palate	Latin	<i>palatum</i> = roof of the mouth
restaurant	Latin	the Latin verb <i>restauro</i> = restore



# LANGUAGE AND HISTORY



New Yorker cover. Copyright Barry Blitt.

*“And the whole earth was of one language and of one speech . . . and they said, ‘Come let us build us a city, and a tower, with its top in heaven, and let us make us a name; lest we be scattered upon the face of the whole earth.’ And the Lord came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men built. And the Lord said, ‘Behold, they are one people, and they have all one language; and this is what they begin to do; and now nothing will be withholden from them, which they purpose to do. Come let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another’s speech.’ So the Lord scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of the earth; and they left off to build the city. Therefore was the name of it called Babel, because the Lord did there confound the language of all the earth.”*

—GENESIS 11:1–9 (KING JAMES VERSION)

## LANGUAGE FAMILIES

Language is a human activity, and like all human activities, it seems to have infinite variability. It is estimated that there are between 2,900 and nearly 10,000 living languages in the world.<sup>1</sup> Nevertheless, despite that variability, it is possible to distinguish the patterns and relationships of many of these languages to one another. As a result, they have been classified into families, the members of which are considered by linguists to be related because of similarities in structure, grammar, phonology, and vocabulary.

Yet like every other kind of human activity, language is subject to change, and many languages have disappeared or evolved into other languages over the centuries. For example, Latin is no longer spoken but it survives through its direct descendants: Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Romanian. Other ancient languages survive only in written form, and still others have disappeared without a trace because they were not written down and their speakers were absorbed into other populations.

### *What Were They Saying?*

What was the first language? Philosophers and linguists, kings and theologians have debated this question for several thousand years. Early Christian scholars maintained that the language spoken in the Garden of Eden was Hebrew, while an eighteenth-century Swedish clergyman jokingly suggested that in the garden, God spoke Swedish, Adam spoke Danish, and the serpent who tempted Eve spoke French.

The major families, or trees, of human languages have many branches.<sup>2</sup>

### *Sino-Tibetan*<sup>3</sup>

Most languages spoken in China belong to the Sinitic branch of this family. There are more than 1 billion speakers of the eight varieties of Chinese that are regarded

---

1. Estimates of the number of languages vary because of the question of what constitutes a distinct language (as opposed to dialect) and because many languages exist only in spoken form. According to the *Cambridge Encyclopedia of Languages*, over 22,000 names of languages, living or dead, have been recorded. According to the *Cambridge Encyclopedia*, there are, however, only 10 languages that have over 100 million speakers: Chinese (over 1 billion); English (750 million, including those countries that count English as an official language); Hindi (490 million); Spanish (420 million); Russian (255 million); Arabic (230 million); Bengali (215 million); Portuguese (213 million); German (129 million); and Japanese (127 million). These figures do not include non-native speakers of these languages and are all, of course, approximate.

2. Estimates of the number of language families vary enormously. It has been suggested by some historical linguists that there are over 350, but over half have fewer than 10,000 speakers.

3. The etymology of the prefix *Sino-*, meaning “Chinese,” is unclear, but many scholars have suggested that it is derived from the Greek *Sīnai*, which in turn was derived from the Arabic *al-Sin*, meaning China.

by some linguists as separate languages, united only by a common writing system.<sup>4</sup>

More than 300 languages in the Tibeto-Burman branch are spoken in parts of Burma, Tibet, Thailand, Vietnam, and Laos.

### *Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic)*<sup>5</sup>

The Afro-Asiatic family includes over 250 languages that are spoken in North Africa and southwest Asia. The Semitic languages, which include Arabic and Hebrew as well as many of the languages of the ancient Near East, constitute the largest branch of this family.

Among other languages belonging to this family are nearly 175 that are spoken in North Africa, including Amharic (the official language of Ethiopia) and Hausa, the primary language of more than 25 million people in West Africa.

### *Dravidian*

The Dravidian family is composed of more than 70 languages spoken primarily in southern and eastern India although native speakers are found as far away as southern and eastern regions of Africa. Although the vast majority of the population of India speaks languages that belong to the Indo-European family, the Dravidian languages are spoken by more than 230 million people. Of this family, Tamil is the most diffuse with 50 million speakers in India, Pakistan, Malaysia, and Indonesia as well as other areas of the Indian and South Pacific Oceans.

### *Niger-Congo*

It is estimated that there are between 1,000 and 3,000 languages spoken in Africa by over 400 million people<sup>6</sup> but fewer than 5 percent have more than 1 million speakers. The largest African language family is the Niger-Congo group, which encompasses about 1,000 languages and several thousand dialects. Within this family are the approximately 700 languages belonging to the Benue-Congo branch, which includes more than 500 Bantu languages, among them Swahili, Rwanda, Khongo, Xhosa, and Zulu. Since there is such an extraordinary diversity of African languages, Swahili or Arabic is often used as a *lingua franca*.<sup>7</sup>

---

4. The Chinese writing system is logographic, meaning that each written character represents a word or phrase. There are thousands of characters in Chinese; according to the Asia Society, full literacy requires the knowledge of 3,000–4,000 logographs.

5. Hamito-Semitic, the former name of this language family, is now obsolete.

6. The difficulty in calculating the number of languages spoken in Africa is due to the fact that many are either isolated geographically or have no writing systems to record them.

7. A *lingua franca* is any language that is used as a means of communication among speakers of different languages that are mutually incomprehensible.

### *Uralic*

The two branches of the Uralic family are the Finno-Ugric languages (including Finnish, Estonian, Hungarian, and Lapp)<sup>8</sup> spoken in central and northern Europe and the much smaller group of Samoyedic languages that are spoken by perhaps 30,000 people scattered across Siberia and the Arctic.

### *Altaic*

The geographic distribution of the Altaic languages ranges from the Balkan peninsula to Central Asia and includes over 40 languages that are divided into three groups: Turkic, Mongolian, and Manchu.<sup>9</sup>

The largest group, Turkic, includes Turkish, Uighur (whose speakers are found mainly in China), and the languages of Azerbaijan,<sup>10</sup> Uzbekistan, Kazakhstan, and Turkmenistan.

Although the Korean and Japanese languages share some similarities with other members of this family, the connections have not been determined precisely.

### *Caucasian Languages*

The region of the Caucasus Mountains, between the Caspian and Black Seas, contains the highest concentration of languages in the world. Although the region is smaller in area than Great Britain, more than 20 different languages are spoken here. But only Georgian has more than 1 million speakers. Because this region formed part of the former Soviet Union, the vocabulary of these languages has been heavily influenced by Russian.

### *North and South American Languages*

At the time of the arrival of Europeans, there were perhaps 300 languages spoken by the indigenous inhabitants of North America. More than half of these have disappeared, with fewer than 300,000 speakers of the languages still remaining.

In South and Central America, there are approximately 11 million speakers of Amerindian languages. Among these languages is Quechua (the language of the Incas, spoken by 8–10 million people across South America and now recognized as an official language in Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru). There once may have been as many as 2,000 languages spoken in South America.

---

8. The area of Lapland is shared by Norway, Sweden, Finland, and Russia.

9. Manchu, once one of the official languages of the Chinese Qing dynasty (1644–1912 CE), is now nearly extinct as a spoken language.

10. Azerbaijan, Uzbekistan, Kazakhstan, and Turkmenistan are all republics that were part of the Soviet Union. Although Russian has the largest number of speakers, there are more than 120 languages spoken in the former Soviet Union.

***Who Are You?***

There are also some languages that are called “orphans” or “isolates,” single languages that seem to bear no relationship to any other, such as Ainu, a now nearly extinct language spoken in areas of Japan but unrelated to Japanese, or Basque, the language of some of the inhabitants of the Pyrenees region of Spain and France.

**What are they talking about?** During World War II, the indigenous Apache language was employed to construct a coded language used by U.S. armed forces to send secret messages. Because of the complexity of the language, the code was never broken.

**THE BRANCHES OF THE INDO-EUROPEAN TREE**

The largest and most widely diffused of these language families is Indo-European, with over 2 billion speakers around the world. Of course the origins of all language families are difficult to pin down with any certainty, but historical and comparative linguists have constructed a model that would explain most fully the development of the Indo-European tree and the growth of its various branches. They posit a common ancestor of these languages that they label Proto-Indo-European (PIE), a language thought to be spoken by a people living about 6,000 years ago in what is now southwestern Russia and Kazakhstan. As this population spread in all directions, PIE evolved into dialects and then into mutually incomprehensible languages, but the common source of these languages can be established through similarities in grammatical structure and vocabulary. Here’s an example.

<i>English</i>	<i>Sanskrit</i>	<i>Persian</i>	<i>Russian</i>	<i>Greek</i>	<i>Latin</i>
brother	bhrata	buradar	brat	phratēr	frater

Linguists have classified the surviving branches of the Indo-European family as follows.<sup>11</sup>

---

11. Many of the languages in the Indo-European family will be unfamiliar to you. Do not worry!



**Indic** (*Spoken Primarily in India*)

Hindi	Bengali	Gujarati	Marathi	Oriya
Punjabi	Romany <sup>12</sup>	Sinhalese	Urdu	Sanskrit <sup>*13</sup>

**Iranian**

Baluchi	Kurdish	Pashto <sup>14</sup>	Farsi (Persian)	Avestan <sup>*</sup>
---------	---------	----------------------	-----------------	----------------------

**Italic**

Latin <sup>*</sup>	Italian	Spanish	Portuguese	Romanian
French				

**Hellenic**

Ancient Greek <sup>*</sup>	Medieval Greek <sup>*</sup>	Modern Greek
----------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------

**Germanic**

German	Dutch	Afrikaans <sup>15</sup>	Flemish
Yiddish <sup>16</sup>	Danish	Norwegian	Swedish
Icelandic	Old English	Middle English <sup>*</sup>	Modern English
	(Anglo/Saxon) <sup>*</sup>		

**Balto-Slavonic**

Russian	Belorussian	Latvian	Lithuanian
Polish	Slovak	Slovene	Czech
Serbian	Croatian	Bulgarian	

**Celtic**

Breton	Gaelic	Irish	Scots
Welsh	Manx <sup>17</sup>	Cornish <sup>18</sup>	

12. Romany is the language of the Roma, a traditionally itinerant people of Europe and the Americas. In English they are frequently referred to as *gypsies*.

13. An asterisk indicates that the language is no longer spoken although it may survive in written form. The sacred writings of many religions around the world sometimes preserve languages that are no longer spoken. For example, the *Rig Veda*, sacred texts of the Hindu religion, are preserved in Sanskrit as is the *Avesta*, which contains the sacred texts of the Zoroastrian religion.

14. Pashto is one of the official languages of Afghanistan.

15. Afrikaans is a form of Dutch that evolved from the dialects of Dutch settlers in South Africa in the seventeenth century. It is now recognized as one the country's official languages.

16. The basic structure and vocabulary of Yiddish is derived from German but contains many Hebrew-based words as well as words that are drawn from the various cultures in which Jews have lived.

17. The last native speaker of Manx died in 1974.

18. Cornish is now nearly extinct as a spoken language.

***Survivors, or Against All Odds***

Some branches of the Indo-European tree have withered and disappeared; others, such as Armenian and Albanian, survive as a single offshoot.

*“Yes, languages die too, like individuals. They may decompose into fine dust or a heap of bones from which it is difficult to reconstruct the image of the living organism that was once there.*

*They may be embalmed and preserved for posterity, changeless and static, lifelike in appearance but unendowed with the breath of life. While they live, however, they change.”*

—MARIO PEI, *The Story of Language*

***Let's Get Together . . .***

Many people believe that foreign language barriers might be breached by the creation of an artificial or constructed language that is accessible to all speakers of different languages and that might serve to foster peace and international understanding. Perhaps the most well-known of these constructed languages is Esperanto, invented by a Polish doctor who published his work in 1887 under the pseudonym *Doktoro Esperanto* (Doctor Hopeful).

**A BRIEF HISTORY OF ENGLISH**

Although English is classified as belonging to the Germanic branch of the Indo-European tree because of its structure, grammar, and basic vocabulary, it has been strongly influenced, through the accidents of history and politics, by other Indo-European languages, most notably Latin and its offshoots (the Romance languages), and, to a lesser extent, Greek.

***Latin and the Power of Rome***

At the height of its power in the second century CE the Roman Empire extended from the Euphrates River in the east to Britain in the west. Everywhere that the Romans went in Europe and North Africa, they brought with them not only soldiers and government officials but their language, and therefore, in order to do business with the ruling powers, one had to learn at least a little Latin. Over several centuries, the Latin spoken in the provinces often became mixed with the local languages, out of which evolved the foundations of at least some of the languages spoken in Europe today.

By the fifth century CE, the Roman Empire had begun to disintegrate as a series of invaders, mostly Germanic, began to carve out sections of the empire as their own. In 410 CE, the Roman army withdrew from Britain, leaving the island to its Celtic

inhabitants and those Latin-speaking missionaries who had come to convert them to Christianity. But less than forty years later, beginning in 449 CE, southern Britain was overrun by the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes, all Germanic tribes from the mainland of Europe. The last of the Germanic peoples to make attacks on Britain were the Vikings, who from the eighth through the eleventh century made sporadic raids along the coasts of Ireland and England.<sup>19</sup>

### *Anglo-Saxon Culture and Old English*

The culture and language of these Germanic peoples is called Anglo-Saxon; and within a relatively short period of time, these peoples had become the dominant political and linguistic power in Britain as the Celts fled west into Ireland and Wales. Although Latin all but disappeared as a spoken language, its influence can still be seen in place names: *-chester*, as in Dorchester, and *-caster*, as in Lancaster, which derive from the Latin *castra*, a military camp. And when the Anglo-Saxons were converted to Christianity in 597 CE, Latin was reintroduced, now as the language of the Church.

The greatest work of Anglo-Saxon—or Old English—literature is the epic poem *Beowulf*, whose opening lines show how much English has changed in 1,500 years.

Hwæt, we gardena in geardagum  
 þeodcýninga þrym gefrunon  
 hu ða æþelingas ellen fremedon!<sup>20</sup>

### *The Norman Conquest and Middle English*

The language spoken in England would have remained basically Germanic in its vocabulary, grammar, and structure had it not been for an intersection of politics and genealogy. In 1066 CE, Edward, king of England, died without an heir, and the Anglo-Saxon nobles elected Harold, who was not related to Edward, as their king. But perhaps out of family loyalty, or perhaps out of a desire for more power, William, ruler of Normandy, whose wife was related to Edward, challenged Harold's right to the throne. William and his army invaded Britain, and at the battle of Hastings, Harold was defeated and killed. On Christmas Day, 1066 CE, William, now called the Conqueror, was crowned King of England and Normandy.

---

19. The Vikings were a seafaring Scandinavian people who spoke a language similar to Old Norse. Perhaps the most famous of the Vikings was the tenth-century adventurer Leif Erikson, who is said to have been the first European to set foot on the North American continent.

20. "Behold! We of the spear Danes from old times / Of the people-kings' glory have heard / How the princes deeds of valor performed."

William brought with him a new ruling class made up of French-speaking Normans<sup>21</sup> who imposed their politics, customs, and language on the Anglo-Saxons. And just as those who had wanted to do business with the Romans had to learn Latin, so those who wanted to be accepted by the Norman power structure had to learn French. For nearly 150 years, French was the language of government, law, and religion. In the thirteenth century, however, as relations deteriorated between England and France, the use of English increasingly became an expression of nationalism, and English began once more to reassert itself. Nevertheless, in part because of the influence of French and in part because all languages change over time, this English was radically different from the Anglo-Saxon of *Beowulf*. Thousands of new vocabulary words had been added to English either from French, a Latin-based language, or directly from Latin, with the result that today English contains twice as many words derived from French or Latin as from German. This newly evolved form is called *Middle English*, and although it is difficult for a speaker of Modern English to read Middle English easily, it contains many recognizable forms and words as the opening lines of fourteenth-century poet Geoffrey Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* illustrates.

Whan that Aprill with his shoures soote  
The droghte of March hath perced to the roote,  
And bathed every veyne in swich licour  
Of which vertu engendred is the flour.<sup>22</sup>

### *Modern English*

Like Old and Middle English, Modern English has been shaped by a number of historical, political, and social events: the European Renaissance and the rebirth of interest in ancient Greek and Roman literature and culture; the development of modern science and technology; British colonialism; and the founding of the United States. But perhaps the greatest single influence on the formation of Modern English was the printing press, whose invention is generally credited to the German Johannes Gutenberg (d. 1468) and which was introduced into England by William Caxton

---

21. Who were the Normans? Actually, in their origins they were also Germanic, having come from Scandinavia (which is why they were called Northmen, or Normans) in the ninth century to settle in France. But they so thoroughly adopted the language and customs of the people there that within a very short period of time they had abandoned their original language for French and subsequently gave their name to that region of northwest France.

22. "When April with its sweet showers / The drought of March has pierced to the root, / and bathed every vein in such moisture / by whose quickening force is engendered the flower."

in 1476. This invention led not only to the standardization of spelling,<sup>23</sup> usage, and pronunciation but was instrumental in the growth of literacy and in an increase in the number of schools. It is not surprising, then, that speech soon became an indication of social class.

Although Latin and Greek continued to be held in high esteem because of a renewed interest in the heritage of the classical tradition, the Renaissance and the rise of the modern nation-state saw the growth of vernacular<sup>24</sup> literatures throughout Europe. Increasingly it was maintained by many that the English language could be employed as effectively as Latin or Greek to express serious thought. After all, as a sixteenth-century English scholar pointed out, the ancient Greeks wrote in Greek, the Romans composed in Latin, and thus it was only natural that the English should employ their own native tongue. At the same time, however, there was the recognition on the part of at least some writers and scholars of a need for a greatly enriched English vocabulary. The coinage of new vocabulary by authors in this period added more than ten thousand new words to the language—ironically, the vast majority of these were derived from Latin and Greek roots. Not all of these newly minted words, however, entered into popular usage, and some did not survive.

Not all of the new words were adapted from Latin or Greek. The argument among sixteenth-century scholars about the “purity” of English vocabulary grew more heated as diplomacy and trade broadened the possibility of linguistic interchange. Although as a matter of national pride vehement objections were raised over the introduction of Italian, French, and Spanish words into English vocabulary, many words such as *vogue*, *essay*, *bizarre*, *piazza*, *mustache*, *gazette*, and *bravado* found a permanent place.

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, the development of modern science, which also added thousands of new vocabulary words to English, was grounded, at least in part, in the view that all activity, including language, could be explained logically and rationally. A focus on the standardization of language and usage also produced an increased interest in *etymology*, or the history of individual words, as a way of determining the precise meaning of words and their correct usage. In 1755, Dr. Samuel Johnson (1709–1784) published *A Dictionary of the English Language*, which contained forty thousand words, their definitions, pronunciations, and varied usages. His dictionary’s intent, he said, was “to reserve the purity and ascertain the meaning of our English idiom.” Dr. Johnson’s *Dictionary* was a landmark in the history of

---

23. The attempt to standardize English spelling had unintended consequences for although the spelling of a word might become fixed, its pronunciation changed over time. As a result, many words now contain letters that are no longer pronounced, for example, *thought* or *weigh*. On the other hand, the letter *b* was added to the spelling of the word *debt* because it was derived from the Latin verb *debeo* (I owe).

24. *Vernacular* means a language that is native to a country but it is also a term used to describe ordinary, or everyday, language as opposed to literary language and expression.

English lexicography and marked the first methodical attempt to establish a standard English vocabulary. During the eighteenth century, there was also an attempt to regularize English grammar and syntax. Although the scientist Joseph Priestley argued that “the custom of speaking is the original and only just standard for any language,” most grammarians subscribed to Dr. Johnson’s insistence that “every language must be formed after the model of one of the ancient,” and as a result, they imposed the rules of Latin grammar on English despite the fact that at least a few scholars recognized that Latin grammar was not particularly well-suited as a model for English.

With the growth of the British Empire, beginning in the seventeenth century, politics once again played a role in the history of the English language. Not only did the native languages of North America, Africa, and Asia contribute large numbers of words to English (such as *moccasin*, *jungle*, *hurricane*, and *tobacco*) but colonialism led to the use of English around the world. By the mid-nineteenth century, the recognition that both the addition of “new” words to English vocabulary and the intricate history of the English language demanded a new kind of dictionary gave impetus to the monumental project that is known as the *Oxford English Dictionary*.<sup>25</sup> Begun in 1879 under the editorship of James Murray, the *Oxford English Dictionary* (OED) was not completed until 1928. Consisting of twelve volumes, it not only gave the various definitions and usages of words but detailed the history of each of the over 400,000 entries. Successive teams of lexicographers have produced several supplements, and the OED now extends to twenty volumes and contains over 500,000 items.

The differences between a dialect and a language are a matter of great debate among linguists since there is no accepted criterion for making any distinction between the two. The simplest definition is that a dialect is a variety of a language that is characteristic of a particular group of the language’s speakers. But who gets to determine what is “standard” and what is a “variety” is often a matter of politics, history, and social structure. As the old joke goes, “A language is a dialect with an army and a navy.”

### *American English*

“England and America are two countries separated by the same language.”

—GEORGE BERNARD SHAW (early twentieth-century English playwright and critic)

Like the general history of English, the history of American English can be divided into periods. The earliest, and most influential, period began with the first permanent

---

25. The members of the Philological Society of Great Britain, to whom the idea of the OED must be credited, argued that existing dictionaries were “incomplete and deficient.”

English-speaking settlement at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607 and ended with the establishment of the United States as an independent country after the American Revolution. During this period, the majority of European settlers in the United States were from Britain, and they brought with them the speech patterns, vocabulary, and grammar of seventeenth- and eighteenth-century England.

The American Revolution was grounded in a struggle for political independence, but at least for some, that meant linguistic independence as well. In 1774, an American patriot declared, “The English language has been greatly improved in Britain within a century, but its highest perfection, with every other branch of human knowledge, is perhaps reserved for this land of light and freedom.” Perhaps the most noteworthy individual in the formation of American English was Noah Webster (1758–1843), who compiled three books: a speller, a grammar, and a reader. The speller was an extraordinary success, and over the next century it would sell more than 80 million copies. His most lasting and influential work, however, was *An American Dictionary of the English Language*, which he wrote as a contribution “into the common treasure of patriotic exertions.” Because Webster believed that a national language was an instrument of unity,

it is not only important, but, in a degree necessary, that the people of this country should have an American Dictionary of the English language; for, although the body of the language is the same as in England, and it is desirable to perpetuate that sameness, yet some differences must exist. Language is an expression of ideas; and if the people of our country cannot preserve an identity of ideas, they cannot retain an identity of language. (preface to *An American Dictionary of the English Language*, 1828)

American English is, of course, the product of both normal linguistic change and the “melting pot” of American society. Each wave of immigration to the United States—from northern, southern, and eastern Europe, from Asia, from Africa, and from South America—has made its own contributions to the development of a distinctly American English not only in terms of vocabulary but in patterns of speech and usage. Yet despite some regional variations, what marks American English is its uniformity. In the last century, the advent of radio, the movies, and television accelerated the process of homogenization of American speech and vocabulary.



Hand from a monumental statue of the Roman Emperor Constantine (313–337 CE). *Museo Capitolino, Rome.*

According to the 2011 U.S. census, over 60 million Americans speak a language other than English at home. The largest numbers belong to the Indo-European family, but among the top ten are Chinese, Korean, Vietnamese, and Tagalog.

### ***How Do You Spell That?***

Noah Webster's eagerness to create an "American" English led to the Americanization of the orthography of many English words that had entered the language through French. Thus *honour* became *honor* and *centre* became *center*. Of course, spelling reform can also create confusion. Although Benjamin Franklin urged that the silent letters in words be eliminated, that would mean that we work hard to put *bred* on the table. And what about the pronunciation of *through*, *although*, *tough*, and *thought*?

There are some words, of course, that might benefit from a firm editorial hand. Although we have all been taught that the longest non-technical word in English is *antidisestablishmentarianism* (twenty-eight letters), the prize actually goes to *floccinaucinihilipilification* (twenty-nine letters), a word said to have been coined as a joke by some British schoolboys but now listed in the OED. It is composed of a number of Latin words, all of which mean "of little or no value." Its meaning is "the action or habit of estimating something as worthless."



## AN OUTLINE OF THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

### *The Roman Occupation of Britain: First Century–410 CE<sup>15</sup>*

1. Earlier presence of Celtic languages (which also belong to the Indo-European family)
2. Introduction of Latin, the language of conquest and commerce
3. Withdrawal of the Roman army (410 CE)

### *The Anglo-Saxons and Old English: 450–1150 CE*

1. Invasion of the Germanic tribes (449 CE)
2. Conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity (597 CE)
3. *Beowulf*: 8th–9th century (?)
4. Viking raids on Britain: 8th–11th century
5. The Norman Conquest (1066 CE)

### *Middle English: 1150–1500 CE*

1. The Anglo-French connection: Loss of many Old English words; addition of thousands of Latin-based words via French; changes in grammar and structure
2. Development of a vernacular literature: Geoffrey Chaucer (d. 1400), *Canterbury Tales*; and William Langland (d. circa<sup>26</sup> 1386), *Piers Plowman*
3. First translation of Bible into English, attributed to John Wycliff (d. 1384)
4. Introduction of the printing press into England by William Caxton (1476)

### *Modern English: 1500 CE–Present*

1. Decline of Latin as common European language of discourse
2. Translations of classical Latin and Greek texts into the vernacular
3. William Shakespeare (1564–1616)
4. Standardization of spelling (*orthography*) and enrichment of English vocabulary (16th–17th century)
5. Dr. Samuel Johnson: *A Dictionary of the English Language* (1755)
6. The development of the scientific study of comparative, historical, and structural linguistics (18th century)
7. The influence of British colonialism and the impact of empire (19th–20th century)
8. James Murray and the *Oxford English Dictionary* (1879–1928)

---

26. The Latin adverb *circa* (around) is used in English to indicate non-specific dates.

*American English**From Jamestown to the End of the Colonial Period: 1607–1790*

The establishment of the forms and patterns of American English, as distinct from British English.

*Westward Expansion: 1790–1860*

1. Immigration from Western Europe and Ireland
2. Noah Webster: *An American Dictionary of the English Language* (1828)
3. Settlement of the far west

*American Civil War: 1865–Present*

1. Emancipation Proclamation (1863): Influence of “Black” English
2. Immigration from eastern and southern Europe (1880–1920)
3. Immigration from Caribbean and South America (1945–Present)
4. Immigration from Asia and the Pacific Rim (1975–Present)
5. Uniformity of language versus regionalism; the influence of radio, television, and movies

***Creole***

Creole is a language that has been formed by the mixing of two or more “parent” languages and that has become the first language of a community. Creoles are often the result of trade or colonialism and slavery, developed out of the need for a common means of communication between different groups. Gullah, a combination of English and West African languages that is now spoken as a first or second language by perhaps a hundred thousand people who live in the islands off the coasts of South Carolina and Georgia, was shaped by Africans brought to America as slaves. Although its vocabulary is for the most part grounded in English, its grammar, sentence structure, and pronunciation have been influenced by the original African languages.

**AND WHAT IS MORE**

Although the strongest influences on the Germanic core vocabulary of English have been Latin and the Romance languages, most of these words have been *Anglicized*, or made to conform to specific English forms and patterns. Some, however, have retained the tones and inflections of their original home, and English contains a host of words and phrases from the Romance languages that have entered English

unchanged in form and meaning. But words from many other languages have also found a new home in English. Here’s a brief selection; there will be more in the following chapters.

*From the Romance Languages*

<i>aficionado</i> (Spanish)	affectionate; an ardent fan
<i>avant-garde</i> (French)	a guard before; experimentalists in any art in a particular period
<i>carte blanche</i> (French)	a blank document; unconditional authority
<i>coup</i> (French)	a blow; a clever action or accomplishment
<i>desperado</i> (Spanish)	outlaw
<i>fiasco</i> (Italian)	a bottle; a total failure
<i>prima donna</i> (Italian)	first lady; a temperamental individual

*From Further Afield*

<i>bazaar</i> (Persian)	a marketplace
<i>candy</i> (Arabic <i>qandi</i> )	a piece of sugar
<i>guru</i> (Hindi)	a teacher or a priest; an influential teacher or mentor
<i>pajama</i> (Hindi)	a loose garment
<i>tycoon</i> (Japanese)	a great prince; a businessperson having great wealth and power

Of course, the etymological road leads in two directions. Take, for example, the French *le weekend* or *le drugstore*.

SOME USEFUL TERMS

**etymology:** the study of the history of a particular word; the derivation or origin of a word

**lexicon:** a dictionary

**lexicography:** the compiling of dictionaries. Dr. Johnson labeled lexicographers “harmless drudges.”

**linguistics:** the science of language, including the history, formation, and structure of languages

**orthography:** correct spelling

**philology:** the study of written records; linguistics

**phonology:** the science of speech sounds, speech elements, and pronunciation

**semantics:** the study of linguistic meaning and form

**syntax:** the rules or patterns of the formation of sentences

***Let Me Count the Words***

How many words are there in English? As the OED points out, there is no single sensible answer to this question but in the dictionary there are 170,476 entries of words in current use, though if distinct meanings are counted the number rises to nearly 750,000.

On the other hand, most lists of basic English vocabulary contain 800–1,000 words. That doesn't mean, of course, that one's vocabulary is limited to that number of words: there are 25,000 words in the *Oxford Pocket Dictionary*, but it is claimed that 90 percent of the concepts that these words define can be expressed with a vocabulary of 850 words.

***Let Me Count the Words (Again) . . .***

According to scholars, William Shakespeare's works contain 31,534 vocabulary words (yes, someone has counted them). And yet, perhaps as an illustration of the decline of the classical languages as an indication of learning, playwright Ben Jonson, Shakespeare's contemporary, describes him with these words: "Though thou hadst small Latin and less Greek."

***We Speak the Same Language, Don't We?***

If in London you follow a sign marked Subway, you will find yourself in an underground passage that allows you to cross a heavily traveled street. The London Underground is the New York City subway. Got that?

***But What Does It Mean?***

*"When I use a word," Humpty Dumpty said, in a rather scornful tone,  
"it means just what I choose it to mean—neither more nor less."*

—LEWIS CARROLL, *Through the Looking Glass*

***Words, Words, and More Words***

It is said that because of the various linguistic strands that form English vocabulary, English contains more synonyms than any other language. Some Latin-based synonyms are simply more elegant forms of Germanic-based vocabulary. For example:

German-Based Word

beg  
behead  
drink  
bitterness  
greedy  
harmful  
hate  
house  
slander  
tiredness

Latin-Based Word

supplicate  
decapitate  
imbibe  
asperity  
rapacious  
deleterious  
abhor  
domicile  
calumniate  
lassitude

***Studying Language Can Be Glamorous***

The words *grammar* and *glamour* have the same etymology. The word *grammar*, which means a system that describes the structures of a particular language, is derived from the Greek word *grammar* (something written). In medieval Europe, few people could read, and those who could were thought to possess special magical power. The original meaning of *glamour*, which is a variant pronunciation of *grammar*, was “magic” or “enchantment.”



## 2 : EXERCISES

1. Approximately how many languages are thought to be spoken in the world? \_\_\_\_\_
2. List three ways by which language families are distinguished: (a) \_\_\_\_\_, (b) \_\_\_\_\_, (c) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Name four language families other than Indo-European: (a) \_\_\_\_\_, (b) \_\_\_\_\_, (c) \_\_\_\_\_, (d) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Where are the Dravidian languages spoken? \_\_\_\_\_ Mon-Khmer? \_\_\_\_\_
5. How many varieties of Chinese are there? \_\_\_\_\_ What common factor unites them? \_\_\_\_\_
6. To what language family does Quechua belong? \_\_\_\_\_ Where is it spoken? \_\_\_\_\_
7. How many, approximately, languages are spoken in Africa? \_\_\_\_\_
8. To what branch of the Indo-European family does English belong? \_\_\_\_\_
9. To which branch of the Indo-European family does Latin belong? \_\_\_\_\_
10. To which branch of the Indo-European family does Greek belong? \_\_\_\_\_
11. What percentage of English vocabulary is derived from Latin and Greek? \_\_\_\_\_ What percentage of scientific and technical vocabulary? \_\_\_\_\_
12. List five Germanic languages that are still spoken today. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_
13. To which language family does Anglo-Saxon belong? \_\_\_\_\_ To which branch? \_\_\_\_\_ Where and when was it spoken? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Name one work written in Old English. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Anglo-Saxon is a synonym for which language? \_\_\_\_\_
16. What event introduced a Latin-based vocabulary into English? \_\_\_\_\_ When did it occur? \_\_\_\_\_ Through which language did most of these words first pass? \_\_\_\_\_

17. Who wrote *Canterbury Tales*? \_\_\_\_\_ To which period of English does it belong?  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Who is generally credited with the introduction of the printing press in England? \_\_\_\_\_  
When? \_\_\_\_\_
19. What effect did the introduction of the printing press have on the development of the English language? \_\_\_\_\_
20. Who compiled *A Dictionary of the English Language*? \_\_\_\_\_ When? \_\_\_\_\_
21. Eighteenth-century grammarians tended to look at which language when establishing the rules of English usage? \_\_\_\_\_
22. Give one cause of the introduction of many non-Indo-European words into English.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. Who was the first editor of the *Oxford English Dictionary*? \_\_\_\_\_ How long did it take to complete? \_\_\_\_\_
24. What was the first permanent English-speaking settlement in America? \_\_\_\_\_ When was it founded? \_\_\_\_\_
25. From which region of Europe did the earliest immigrants to the United States come?  
\_\_\_\_\_
26. During the period 1880–1920, from which area did most of the immigrants come? \_\_\_\_\_  
During the period since 1945? \_\_\_\_\_
27. What were Noah Webster's contributions to American English? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
28. What is etymology? \_\_\_\_\_
29. What is linguistics? \_\_\_\_\_
30. What is orthography? \_\_\_\_\_
31. If someone says, "It's only a matter of semantics," what does she mean? \_\_\_\_\_
32. What is the largest language family? \_\_\_\_\_ How many people worldwide speak a language that belongs to that family? \_\_\_\_\_
33. Which language has the largest number of speakers? \_\_\_\_\_ Why? \_\_\_\_\_

34. How many people worldwide speak English as their first language? \_\_\_\_\_
35. What does the term *vernacular* mean? \_\_\_\_\_
36. What has been the effect of television and the movies on American English?  
\_\_\_\_\_
37. What is lexicography? \_\_\_\_\_
38. Why is French called a Romance language? \_\_\_\_\_
39. What is an “orphan” language? \_\_\_\_\_ Give one example. \_\_\_\_\_
40. What is a *lingua franca*? \_\_\_\_\_ Give one example. \_\_\_\_\_
41. Sanskrit is no longer spoken, but how is it preserved? \_\_\_\_\_
42. From which language does the word *tycoon* come? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its literal meaning in that language? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its English usage? \_\_\_\_\_
43. From which language does the word *fiasco* come? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its literal meaning in that language? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its English usage? \_\_\_\_\_
44. From what language does the phrase *carte blanche* come? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its meaning in that language? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its English usage? \_\_\_\_\_

What are the Germanic-based synonyms for the following Latin-based words? Use your unabridged dictionary if you are not sure of the meaning of the Latin-based word.

45. acrimonious \_\_\_\_\_
46. juvenile \_\_\_\_\_
47. mordant \_\_\_\_\_
48. bibulous \_\_\_\_\_
49. execrate \_\_\_\_\_

What is the biggest source of new vocabulary today? \_\_\_\_\_

The following words have entered English unchanged (but sometimes with slight changes in spelling) from other languages. Use your unabridged dictionary to find the language of origin and meaning.



		<i>Language of Origin</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
51.	angst	_____	_____
52.	nadir	_____	_____
53.	khaki	_____	_____
54.	sputnik	_____	_____
55.	caravan	_____	_____
56.	taboo	_____	_____
57.	mummy	_____	_____
58.	bungalow	_____	_____
59.	pariah	_____	_____

## HOW LATIN WORKS



Roman forum.

*Latin is a dead language,  
As you can plainly see.  
It killed off all the Romans,  
And now it's killing me.*

—Popular rhyme among students of Latin

## INFLECTED LANGUAGES

Before we can begin to study the Greek and Latin roots of English vocabulary, we must first understand something of the way in which these languages “work.” In modern English, the function of any word in a sentence or a phrase is determined by its position. For example,

*The dog bites the man.*

has a very different meaning from

*The man bites the dog.*

whereas

*The man dog bites.*

and

*Bites man the dog the.*

have no meaning at all.

Both Latin and Greek, however, are inflected languages. That means that the functions of words within a particular sentence are determined not by word order, as in English, but by various endings that are placed on each word. In Latin,

*canis* = dog

*vir* = man

*mordeo* = bite

If we want to say *The dog bites the man*, we can write any of the following:

*Canis virum mordet. or*

*Canis mordet virum. or*

*Virum canis mordet. or*

*Mordet virum canis.*

No matter how we arrange the words, the meaning of the sentence is always the same because the ending (inflection) of each word determines its function in the sentence. If we want to change the meaning of the sentence, we have to change the endings of the words. If we want to say, *The man bites the dog*, we can write:

*Canem vir mordet.*

*Canem mordet vir.*

*Mordet vir canem.*

What has changed in these different Latin sentences? Can you explain why these changes have occurred?

### ***Inflection***

All Indo-European languages (including English) were originally highly inflected, although English has lost most of the distinctive endings. We can see the persistence of inflection in English, however, in such changes in form as *I, my, me; he, his, him; goose, geese; sing, sang, sung; teach, teaches, taught*; and *think, thought*. What grammatical change does each of these different forms indicate?

### ***What Do You Call That Word?***

Every part of a sentence has a name that helps us figure out what's going on. All the terms used to describe the parts of speech in English are derived from Latin roots.

*noun* = a word referring to a person, place, thing, state, or quality. Examples: a person (*doctor*), a place (*city*), or a thing (*book*).

*adjective* = a word that modifies, or qualifies, a noun. Examples: a *good* doctor, the *big* city, an *interesting* book.

*verb* = a word that indicates some performance of an action or the existence of a condition. Examples: The doctor *owns* a car. I *love* the city. This course *is* boring.

*adverb* = a word that modifies, or qualifies, a verb or adjective. Examples: He walked *slowly*. She spoke *softly*. I accepted his offer *happily*.

*preposition* = a word placed before a noun to form a phrase that modifies another noun, adjective, or verb. Examples: He walked *with* his friends. We fought *against* our enemies.

*conjunction* = a word that acts as a connector between words, phrases, clauses, or sentences. Examples: They walked slowly *and* saw the dog. I loved him *but* I did not like his sister.

### ***Gender Differences***

Gender is a grammatical category that is used to classify nouns, pronouns, and adjectives (and in some languages, verbs). In the Romance languages, the gender of nouns can be determined by their article (e.g., *the*). These articles are derived from the masculine and feminine forms of the Latin demonstrative adjective for “that”: *ille, illa*.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Italian</i>
<i>ille</i> (that man)	el	le	il
<i>illa</i> (that woman)	la	la	la

LATIN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The changes in the endings of nouns and adjectives are determined by *declension*. Each change of form that occurs is called a *case*. There are six cases in Latin, each one expressing a possible function of a noun, pronoun, or adjective in a sentence as we see in the example of *femina* (woman).

Case	Singular Form	Function	Example	Plural Form
nominative	femina	subject	The woman carries a book. <sup>1</sup>	feminae
genitive	feminae	possessive	I carry the woman's book.	feminārum
dative	feminae	indirect object	I give a book to the woman.	feminīs
accusative	feminam	direct object	I see the woman.	feminās
ablative	feminā	means or agent	It was done by the woman.	feminīs
vocative	femina	direct address	Woman, look at this!	feminae

There are five declensions (that is, five different sets of endings) in Latin, and every noun and adjective belongs to one of these five declensions. Each declension is identified by the ending found in the genitive (i.e., possessive) case.

- 1. The first declension is identified by *-ae* in the genitive case:

Latin Noun or Adjective	English Meaning
nauta, nautae	sailor, of the sailor
dea, deae	goddess, of the goddess
familia, familiae	household, of the household
amica, amicae	(female) friend, of the (female) friend

- 2. The second declension is identified by *-i* in the genitive case:

Latin Noun or Adjective	English Meaning
vir, viri	man, of the man
amicus, amici	(male) friend, of the (male) friend
bellum, belli	war, of the war
bonum, boni	good (thing), of the good (thing)

1. There is no indefinite article (*a, an*) or definite article (*the*) in Latin.

3. The third declension is identified by *-is* in the genitive case:

<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
rex, regis	king, of the king
mens, mentis	mind, of the mind
urbs, urbis	city, of the city
pax, pacis	peace, of peace

4. The fourth declension is identified by *-ūs* in the genitive case:

<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
manus, manūs	hand, of the hand
cornu, cornūs	horn, of the horn
domus, domūs	house, of the house
portus, portūs	harbor, of the harbor

5. The fifth declension is identified by *-ei* in the genitive case:

<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
fides, fidei	faith, of the faith
dies, diei	day, of the day
species, speciei	appearance, of the appearance
facies, faciei	form, shape, face; of the form, of the shape, of the face

There are relatively few nouns and no adjectives that belong to the fourth and fifth declensions.

## FINDING THE STEM OF A LATIN NOUN OR ADJECTIVE

The reason why it is so important to understand how declensions work is that almost all English words derived from Latin nouns and adjectives are formed from the stem of the Latin word. The stem of a noun or adjective is the genitive case minus the case ending.<sup>2</sup>

---

2. Since adjectives agree with the nouns they describe, they too have gender. In this text, the neuter form of the adjective is most often the one given.

<i>Genitive Case</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Examples of an English Word Derived from the Latin Stem</i>
<i>feminae</i>	femin-	feminine
<i>portae</i>	port-	portal
<i>virī</i>	vir-	virile
<i>belli</i>	bell-	bellicose
<i>regis</i>	reg-	regal
<i>mentis</i>	ment-	demented
<i>urbis</i>	urb-	urbane
<i>manūs</i>	man-	manual
<i>fidei</i>	fid-	fidelity



Marcus Aurelius, last of the “good” Roman emperors (161–180 CE). While on campaign, he composed a work of philosophy, *The Meditations*, that was grounded in Stoic teachings. *Vatican Museum.*

## LATIN VERBS

Just as nouns and adjectives are inflected, so are verbs. The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*. The changes in verb endings indicate person (first, second, or third person);<sup>3</sup> tense (time of action); voice (active or passive);<sup>4</sup> and mood (indicative, subjunctive, or imperative).<sup>5</sup>

Almost every Latin verb has four stems (called principal parts), each of which has a different function and from which are formed all the possible tenses and voices. For example,

*amo-amare-amavi-amatum* = love

*amo* = I love (first-person singular, present tense, active voice)

*amamus* = We love (first-person plural, present tense, active voice)

*amavi* = I have loved (first-person singular, perfect tense, active voice)

*amabitur* = she (or he or it) will be loved (third-person singular, future tense, passive voice)

*amata eras* = You (fem.) had been loved (second-person singular, pluperfect tense, passive voice)

*amatē* = Love! (imperative)

*amare* = to love (infinitive)<sup>6</sup>

## CONJUGATIONS

There are four conjugations, each of which is distinguished by the vowel that appears in the infinitive form:

1. The first conjugation is distinguished by *a* in the infinitive form:

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>amo-amare-amatum</i>	love
<i>porto-portare-portatum</i>	carry

---

3. First person = *I, we*; second person = *you*; third person = *he, she, it* (singular) or *they* (plural).

4. The use of the active voice indicates that the subject of the sentence is doing the action (*The wolf ate the boy*). The passive voice indicates that the subject of the sentence is receiving the action (*The boy was eaten by the wolf*).

5. Mood is a way of expressing the action of a verb as a fact (indicative), as a command (imperative), or as a possibility that may or may not occur (subjunctive). The subjunctive in both Latin and Greek has many uses.

6. An infinitive is a form of the verb that is without inflection. In English it is most often introduced by the word *to*; for example, "He wants *to buy* a car."



2. The second conjugation is distinguished by ē (long e) in the infinitive form:

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
moneo-monēre-monitum	warn
teneo-tenēre-tentum	hold

3. The third conjugation is distinguished by ě (short e) in the infinitive form:

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
duco-ducere-ductum	lead
facio-facere-factum	make, do

4. The fourth conjugation is distinguished by i in the infinitive form:

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
audio-audire-auditum	hear
venio-venire-ventum	come

FINDING THE STEM OF A LATIN VERB

Almost all English derivatives of Latin verbs are formed either from the present infinitive stem (which is the infinitive minus the *-re* ending) or from the perfect passive stem (the fourth principal part minus the *-um* ending).<sup>7</sup> Very often when a suffix is added to the present stem of a verb (see chapter 4), the distinguishing vowel of the conjugation is also dropped before the suffix is added.

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Passive</i> <sup>8</sup>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
portare (to carry)	portā-	portatum	portat-
monēre (to warn)	monē-	monitum	monit-
tenēre (to hold)	tenē-	tentum	tent-
ducere (to lead)	duce-	ductum	duct-
agere (to do)	age-	actum	act-
facere (to make)	face-	factum	fact-
venire (to come)	veni-	ventum	vent-
audire (to hear)	audi-	auditum	audit-

7. For this reason, the third principal part of the verb will not be given in subsequent vocabulary.

8. The perfect passive form is really a verbal adjective (called a participle) as well as a verb (e.g., *scrambled eggs* or *spoken words*). Since all nouns and adjectives have gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter), every participle has a masculine, feminine, or neuter form depending on the gender of the noun it is describing. The form using *-um* is the neuter form. We shall see in the following chapters the consequences of this dual function of the participle.

## Deponent Verbs

There is a class of Latin verbs called *deponent*. These are verbs that are conjugated with the passive endings only but that have active meanings. The conjugation to which each deponent verb belongs is identified in the infinitive form already noted. The mark of the passive infinitive is a final *-i*.

1. A first conjugation deponent verb is distinguished by an *a* in the infinitive form:

### Example

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
arbitrari	think, decide	arbitra-	arbitratum	arbitrat-
hortari	urge	horta-	hortatum	hortat-

2. A second conjugation deponent verb is distinguished by an *ē* in the infinitive form:

### Example

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
fatēri	speaking, acknowledge	fatē-	fassum	fass-
merēri	deserve, earn	merē-	meritum	merit-

3. A third conjugation deponent verb loses the *er-* of the infinitive and retains only the final *i* as the indication of the infinitive:

### Example

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
sequi	follow	sequ-	secutum	secut-
loqui	speaking	loqu-	locutum	locut-

4. The fourth conjugation is distinguished by an *i* in the infinitive form:

### Example

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
experiri	try	experi-	expertum	expert-
partiri	share, divide	parti-	partitum	partit-

As we shall see, there are many English words derived from these verbs. See if you can find English words derived from both the present and perfect stems of the examples given above.

## SOME VERY USEFUL LATIN VERBS

<i>Principal Parts</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>
ago-agere-actum	do, drive	age-	act-
audio-audire-auditum	hear	audi-	audit-
capio-capere-captum <sup>9</sup>	take	cape-	capt-
cedo-cedere-cessum	go, yield	cede-	cess-
dico-dicere-dictum	speak, say	dice-	dict-
do-dare-datum	give	da-	dat-
duce-ducere-ductum	lead	duc-	duct-
facio-facere-factum	make	face-	fact-
fero-ferre-latum	bear, carry	fer-	lat-
loquor-loqui-locutum	speak	loque-	locut-
mitto-mittere-misum	send	mitte-	miss-
moveo-movēre-motum	move	movē-	mot-
pono-ponere-positum	put, place	pone-	posit-
scribe-scribere-scriptum	write	scrib-	script-
sto-stare-statum	stand	sta-	stat-
teneo-tenēre-tentum	hold	tenē-	tent-
verte-vertere-versum	do, drive	vete-	vers-
video-vidēre-visum	see	vidē-	visum-
voco-vocare-vocatum	call	voca-	vocat-

***Be Grateful for Small Things***

To the great relief of Latin students everywhere, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions are not declined.

***Double Meanings***

Sometimes two words will have the same Latin root but end up appearing in words that have totally different meanings. For example,

*egregious* and *gregarious* both derive from *grex, gregis* = flock

*salary* and *saline* both derive from *sal, salis* = salt

*money* and *admonish* both derive from *moneo, monēre, monitum* = warn

Check your unabridged English dictionary for current meanings of these words and how these meanings developed.

9. In compounds of *capio*, *facio*, and *teneo*, the *a* or *e* of the present stem is replaced by an *i*. For example: *recipio-recipere-receptum* = take back; *conficio-conficere-confectum* = make together, accomplish; and *retineo-retinēre-retentum* = hold back, restrain.

**Doublets**

When two different English words derive from the same root and often (but not always) have related meanings but different English spellings, they are called *doublets*. Doublets most often occur when a Latin root comes into English in two different ways—for example, directly from Latin and also through an intermediary language such as French. Here are some examples:

*amiable* and *amicable* both derive from *amicus*, *amici* = friend

*card* and *chart* both derive from *charta*, *chartae* = paper

*poison* and *potion* both derive from *potio*, *potionis* = drink

*royal* and *regal* both derive from *rex*, *regis* = king

*traitor* and *tradition* both derive from *trado*, *tradere*, *traditum* = hand over

Check your unabridged dictionary to see if you can find a word that is a doublet of *fragile*.

***Un Faux Ami, or What Did I Say?***

A word can be spelled the same in two different languages but have no etymological connection. For example, the French word *coin* means “corner,” while the German word *kind* means “child.” The French call seemingly related words like these *faux amis* (false friends).





### 3 : E X E R C I S E S

**A. Find the stem of each of the following Latin nouns or adjectives and list an English derivative and its current usage. Use your unabridged English dictionary to find the derivative and its definition. Remember: the genitive case (minus the ending) gives each noun or adjective its stem.**

**Example**

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
liber, liberi	free	liber-	liberal	favorable to progress
audax, audacis	bold	audac-	audacious	boldness, daring

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
1. aqua, aquae	water	_____	_____	_____
2. liber, libri	book	_____	_____	_____
3. corpus, corporis	body	_____	_____	_____
4. nox, noctis	night	_____	_____	_____
5. mors, mortis	death	_____	_____	_____
6. lex, legis	law	_____	_____	_____
7. pes, pedis	foot	_____	_____	_____
8. vulnus, vulneris	wound	_____	_____	_____
9. os, oris	mouth	_____	_____	_____
10. grave, gravis	heavy	_____	_____	_____
11. vita, vitae	life	_____	_____	_____
12. tempus, temporis	time	_____	_____	_____

**B. In exercises 13–20, find the present stem, an English derivative, and the derivative's current usage for each of the following Latin verbs (first principal parts are not given).**

**Example**

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
docēre-doctum	teach	docē-	docile	easily managed
tangere-tactum	touch	tange-	tangible	able to be touched

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
13. credere-creditum	believe	_____	_____	_____
14. plaudere-plausum	clap	_____	_____	_____
15. fallere-falsum	deceive	_____	_____	_____
16. sentire-sensum	feel	_____	_____	_____
17. vocare-vocatum	call	_____	_____	_____
18. mirari-miratum	wonder at	_____	_____	_____
19. nasci-natum	be born	_____	_____	_____
20. dormire-dormitum	sleep	_____	_____	_____

In exercises 21–27, find the perfect stem, an English derivative, and the derivative's current usage for each of the Latin verbs listed below (first principal parts of these verbs are not given).

**Example**

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
docēre-doctum	doct-	doctor	a physician, a learned person
tangere-tactum	tact-	tactile	pertaining to touch

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
21. mandare-mandatum	_____	_____	_____
22. credere-creditum	_____	_____	_____
23. sentire-sensum	_____	_____	_____
24. vocare-vocatum	_____	_____	_____
25. mirari-miratum	_____	_____	_____
26. nasci-natum	_____	_____	_____
27. dormire-dormitum	_____	_____	_____

**C. The following Latin words have come into English without any change in form or ending. Find the original Latin meaning of each word by looking in an unabridged dictionary. Which of these words have changed in meaning even when they have remained the same in form?**

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Latin Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Meaning</i>
28. miser	_____	_____
29. bonus	_____	_____
30. pauper	_____	_____
31. minister	_____	_____
32. album	_____	_____
33. arbiter	_____	_____
34. rumor	_____	_____
35. crux	_____	_____
36. via	_____	_____
37. explicit	_____	_____
38. major	_____	_____
39. gratis	_____	_____
40. onus	_____	_____
41. rancor	_____	_____
42. squalor	_____	_____
43. ulterior	_____	_____
44. valor	_____	_____

**D. In exercises 45–60, fill in the blank with the word that best completes the meaning of the sentence. You can check the vocabulary words that appear in this chapter, and make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct. For example, “An *audition* allows an actor to be *heard*.”**

45. An *agent* is someone who \_\_\_\_\_ things for you.
46. A \_\_\_\_\_ is one who has been *taken* by force.
47. A \_\_\_\_\_ goes by *foot*.
48. *Data* is information that is \_\_\_\_\_.
49. At a *convention*, delegates \_\_\_\_\_ together.



50. A *factory* is a place where goods are \_\_\_\_\_.
51. The *inscription* was \_\_\_\_\_ on the wall of the house.
52. *Status* is an indication of one's social \_\_\_\_\_.
53. *Transportation* is a means of \_\_\_\_\_ goods or people across long distances.
54. A \_\_\_\_\_ is money *put down* on an item to be purchased.
55. "Please *remit* payment" is a polite way of saying "\_\_\_\_\_ us back the money."
56. *Elocution* lessons teach you how to \_\_\_\_\_ out.
57. A \_\_\_\_\_ *leads* the orchestra.
58. When he told me he had reverted to smoking, I knew he had \_\_\_\_\_ back to his bad habits.
59. I got a *merit* increase in my paycheck that I \_\_\_\_\_ because of my hard work.
60. He *exhorted* the students to work harder, but his \_\_\_\_\_ had no effect.

**E. In exercises 61–68, fill in the blank in each sentence with one of the words listed below that best completes the meaning of the sentence. If you are unsure of the meanings of these words, check your unabridged dictionary.**

mordant

portals

gratis

arbiter

morbid

nausea

amorous

sequence

61. He said he loved me, but I rejected his \_\_\_\_\_ advances.
62. His \_\_\_\_\_ remark made me feel as if he wanted to bite me.
63. We couldn't reach an agreement and so the court appointed an \_\_\_\_\_ to make the decision.
64. I wanted to be a sailor but I suffered from \_\_\_\_\_.
65. Before I had reached the \_\_\_\_\_ of the building, the guard opened the door.
66. His \_\_\_\_\_ jokes convinced me that he had a sick sense of humor.

67. He said he was presenting the outline of the course in \_\_\_\_\_ so that I could follow what he was saying.

68. I knew there would be a price to pay even though my friend said the tickets to the concert were \_\_\_\_\_.

**F. Sometimes a Latin verb form will turn into a noun in English. Use your unabridged dictionary to discover the literal meanings of the italicized words and their current meanings in the following sentences.**

69. The *recipe* called for six eggs but there were only five left in the refrigerator.

70. His speech contained one *non sequitur* after another and as a result no one in the audience could understand what he was trying to say.

71. His book had the *imprimatur* of the leading scholars in his field of research.

72. The doctor revealed that he had given me only a *placebo*, but even so, I felt much better.

	<i>Latin Meaning</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
recipe	_____	_____
non sequitur	_____	_____
imprimatur	_____	_____
placebo	_____	_____



## LATIN INTO ENGLISH



Portrait of a man, third century CE. Adana Museum, Turkey.

*"I trade with both the living and the dead, for the enrichment of our native tongue.  
We have enough in England to supply our necessity, but if we will have things  
of magnificence and splendor, we must get them by commerce."*

—JOHN DRYDEN (English poet, 1631–1700),  
dedication of his translation of Vergil's *Aeneid*

FORMING NEW WORDS

Just as we form adjectives and nouns in English from other English nouns and verbs (e.g., *woman, womanly; farm, farmer; move, movement, movable*), so too did Latin and Greek. Each ending (suffix) that we add to the stem of a noun or adjective tells us something about the quality or nature of the word.

ADJECTIVE-FORMING SUFFIXES  
USED WITH LATIN NOUN STEMS<sup>1</sup>

<i>Latin Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-alis, -ialis	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-al, -ial
-anus, -ianius	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-an, -ian
-aris, -arius	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-ar, -ary
-ilis	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-il, -ile
-inus	having the characteristic of, belonging to	-ine
-osus	full of, abounding in	-ose, -ous
-lentus	full of, abounding in	-lent

Examples

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
princeps, principis	chief	princip-	principalis	principal
margo, marginis	edge, boundary	margin-	marginalis	marginal
socius, socii	ally, companion	soci-	socialis	social
vox, vocis	voice	voc-	vocalis	vocal
urbs, urbis	city	urb-	urbanus	urban
mare, maris	sea	mar-	marinus	marine
familia, familiae	family	famil-	familiaris	familiar
vir, viri	man	vir-	virilis	virile
servus, servi	slave	serv-	servilis	servile
copia, copiae	abundance	copi-	copiosus	copious
virus, viri	poison	vir-	virulentus	virulent

Because Latin nouns and adjectives have gender, the Romans commonly used the masculine, feminine, or neuter form of the adjective as a noun, e.g.,

<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>Gender</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
magnus, magni	masculine	large, <i>but also</i> the large man
magna, magnae	feminine	large, <i>but also</i> the large woman
magnum, magni	neuter	large, <i>but also</i> the large thing

1. In this section the masculine forms of the adjectives are used.

## NOUN-FORMING SUFFIXES USED WITH LATIN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Sometimes we wish to express the abstract quality of a particular noun or adjective, and we do so by forming a new noun (e.g., *man*, *manly*, *manliness*; *state*, *statehood*; *handsome*, *handsomeness*; *kind*, *kindly*, *kindliness*).

<i>Latin Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-atus	office, group engaged in	-ate
-itas, -ietas	quality of	-ity, -iety
-itudo	abstract state or quality	-itude
-itia	abstract state or quality	-ice
-monium, -monia	abstract state or quality	-mony
-ia, -ium	abstract state or quality	-y
-arium	place where	-arium
-ista	one who believes in	-ist <sup>2</sup>
-ismus	an abstract belief in	-ism

### Examples

<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Stem</i>	<i>Latin Derivative</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
princeps, principis	chief	princip-	principatus	principate
breve, brevis	short	brev-	brevitas	brevity
socius, socii	friend-ally	soci-	societas	society
varium, varii	different	vari-	varietas	variety
virile, virilis	manly	viril-	virilitas	virility
magnum, magni	large	magn-	magnitudo	magnitude
gratum, grati	pleasing	grat-	gratitudo	gratitude
mater, matris	mother	matr-	matrimonium	matrimony <sup>3</sup>
pater, patris	father	patr-	patrimonium	patrimony
custos, custodis	guard	custod-	custodia	custody
aqua, aquae	water	aqu-	aquarium	aquarium
sol, solis	sun	sol-	solarium	solarium
servus, servi	slave	serv-	servitudo	servitude

2. -ist and -ism. These Latin endings are actually derived from Greek suffixes and most often used to form *learned borrowings* in English, e.g., *socialist*, *socialism*.

3. What do the English meanings of *matrimony* and *patrimony* tell us about the roles of men and women in Roman society?

**DIMINUTIVE-FORMING SUFFIXES  
WITH LATIN NOUNS**

We may indicate the smallness or familiarity of an object or person by the addition of a suffix (e.g., *drop*, *droplet*).

<i>Latin Suffix</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-culum	-cule
-ellum	-el
-illum	-il
-olum	-ole
-uleum, -ulus or -ulum	-ule

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Derivative Form</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
corpus	body	corpusculus	corpuscle
mus	mouse	musculus	muscle
moles	mass	moleculus	molecule
novum	new	novellus	novel
pupus	boy	pupillus	pupil (student)
pupa	girl	pupilla	pupil (of the eye) <sup>4</sup>
area	ground	areola	areole, areola
nux	nut	nuculeus	nucleus
modus	measure	modulus	module

**NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES  
FORMED FROM LATIN VERBS**

We may also make a noun or adjective from a verb by the addition of a suffix. The newly formed noun or adjective then retains the quality of action in the verb (e.g., the verb *make* > the noun *maker*; the verb *like* > the adjective *likeable*). In Latin, nouns and adjectives may be formed from either the present active or perfect passive stem of the verb. Remember that the present stem will often lose its final vowel especially if it is joined to a suffix that begins with a vowel.

4. Check your dictionary to find out why the masculine *pupillus* and the feminine *pupilla* have different meanings.



"I MISS THE GOOD OLD DAYS WHEN ALL WE HAD TO WORRY ABOUT WAS NOUNS AND VERBS."

"I Miss the Good Old Days."  
www.cartoonstock.com.

## Nouns and Adjectives Formed from the Present Stem of Latin Verbs

<i>Latin Noun Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-mentum	state of, quality of	-ment
-bulus, -bulum	means of, place of, result of	-ble
-men	means of, place of, result of	-men
-or	means of, place of, result of	-or
-culus, -culum	means of, place of, result of	-cle

<i>Latin Adjectival Ending</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-bile, -ilis	capable of being	-ble, -ile
-ax, -acis	inclined to	-acious
-uus, -ulus	inclined to	-uous, -ulous
-idum	inclined to	-id
-ens, -entis (sing.)	indicates present participle	-nt <sup>5</sup>
-ntes or -entia (pl.)	indicates present participle	-nce or -ncy

5. A participle is a verb form used as an adjective. The present active participle is formed most often in English by adding the suffix *-ing* to the basic form of the verb—e.g., the *running* man, the *smiling* horses, the *pouring* rain. Because Latin participles are also adjectives, they can be declined and can be either singular or plural. All present participles in Latin belong to the third declension.



## Examples

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
sto-stare	stand	sta-	stabulum	stable (noun)
			stabile	stable (adjective)
doceo-docēre	teach, show	docē-	docile	docile
			documentum	document
specio-specere	look at	spece-	specimen	specimen
rigeo-rigēre	stiffen	rigē-	rigor	rigor
			rigidum	rigid
vivo-vivere	live	vive-	vividum	vivid
			vivax-vivacis	vivacious
audeo-audēre	dare	audē-	audax-audacis	audacious
veho-vehere	carry, ride	vehe-	vehiculum	vehicle
credo-credere	believe	crede-	credulum	credulous
			credibile	credible
tango-tangere	touch	tange-	tangens-tangentis	tangent
			tangibile	tangible
vaco-vacare	be empty	vaca-	vacuum	vacuous
			vacans-vacantis	vacant
tolero-tolerare	bear	tolera-	tolerans-tolerantis	tolerant
			tolerantia	tolerance
ago-agere	do, drive	age-	agens-agentis	agent
			agentia	agency
rego-regere	rule	rege-	regens-regentis	regent
audio-audire	hear	audi-	audientes	audience

## Noun- and Adjective-forming Suffixes with the Perfect Passive Stem of Latin Verbs<sup>6</sup>

<i>Latin Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-or	he who	-or
-ura	act of, result of	-ure
-orius, -orium	that which is used for	-ory, -orium
-ivum	given to	-ive
-io, -ionis	state of, result of, process of	-ion
-ilis, -ile	capable of being	-ile

6. The fourth principal part of the verb, from which the perfect passive stem is derived, is also a participle, but passive in meaning, and refers to some event that happened in the past. It is most often expressed in English by the suffixes *-ed* and *-en*: *scrambled eggs* (eggs that have been scrambled), *a broken leg* (a leg that has been broken), or *a married man* (a man who has been married). Although the stem has a passive meaning, it can take on an active meaning when a suffix is added (see examples above).

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Perfect Stem</i>	<i>Latin Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
ago-agere-actum	act-	actor activum actio, actionis	actor active action
doceo-docēre-doctum	doct-	doctor, doctoris	doctor
sto-stare-statum	stat-	statura, staturae statio, stationis	stature station
facio-facere-factum	fact-	factorium, factorii factio, factionis	factory faction
capio-capere-captum	capt-	captor, captoris captura, capturae captivum, captivi	captor capture captive
audio-audire-auditum	audit-	auditorium, auditorii auditio, auditionis auditor, auditoris	auditorium audition auditor
mitto-mittere-misum	miss-	missio, missionis missilis, missilis	mission missile
tango-tangere-tactum	tact-	tactile, tactilis	tactile
video-vidēre-visum	vis-	visibile, visibilis visio, visionis	visible vision
voco-vocare-vocatum	vocat-	vocatio, vocationis	vocation

### ***Can You Spell That?***

Although knowing the Latin root of an English word often can help you figure out how to spell it, unfortunately this doesn't always work. For example, the person who holds a piece of property should be a *tenent* since the word's Latin root is *teneo-tenēre*. What is the correct English spelling of this word? Check your dictionary to find out the reason why.

## **VERBAL SUFFIXES**

The Romans added the verbs *ago*, *facio*, and *capio* to adjectives, nouns, and verbs to form new verbs, adjectives, and nouns. The newly formed verbs then had the meaning of either *do*, *make*, or *take* a certain state.

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Compound Verb Form</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
ago-agere	do, drive	-igo	-igate, igation
facio-facere	make, do	-fico	-fy, fic, ficate
capio-capere	take	-cipo	-cipate, cipation

<i>Latin Adjective, Noun, or Verb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Compound Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
castum, casti	pure	castigo (make pure)	castigate <sup>7</sup>
navis, navis	ship	navigo (drive a ship)	navigate
pax, pacis	peace	pacifico (make peace)	pacify, pacific
terreo, terrēre	frighten	terrifico (make afraid)	terrify, terrific
pars, partis	part	participo (take part)	participate

By adding the suffix *-sco* to a verb stem, noun, or adjective, Latin indicates the process of beginning or continuing.

<i>Latin Root</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Compound Form</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
candeo-candēre	shine	candescio (begin to shine)	candescent-incandescent <sup>8</sup>
seneo-senēre	be old	senescio (grow old)	senescent, senescence
quies, quietis	rest	quiesco (grow quiet)	quiescent

### VERBAL LEARNED BORROWINGS<sup>9</sup>

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
caedo-caedere-caesum	kill	-cide	killer, killed
facio-facere-factum	make	-fact	made
fero-ferre-latum	carry	-fer	carry
voro-vorare-voratum	eat	-vore	eater

7. *Castigare* also has passed into English via French. Can you figure out what English words are derived from the French word that means “to castigate”?

8. What is the difference in meaning between *candescent* and *incandescent*?

9. A “learned borrowing” is an English word or part of a word based on a Latin or Ancient Greek word or part of a word. The Ancient Greek or Latin word sometimes is given a meaning that it did not have in Greek or Latin—for example, *tele-* (from a distance) and *phone* (sound). The Greeks of the fifth century BCE did not have telephones, but because of the high esteem in which classical learning was held in the nineteenth century, these Ancient Greek words were used to form the name of this nineteenth-century invention.

What are the meanings of these English derivatives?

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>English Adjective</i>
frater, fratris	brother	fratricide	fratricidal
ars, artis	skill	artifact	artificial
aqua, aquae	water	aquifer	aquiferous
omne, omnis	all	omnivore	omnivorous

### ***What Does That Mean?***

Sometimes an English word will retain its singular and plural Latin endings when it comes into English. For example, *ago-agere* (do) produces *agenda*, which literally means “the things that are to be done,” while *erro-errare-erratum* (wander, go astray) gives us *erratum* (mistake) and *errata* (mistakes).

### ***Anglo-Saxon Suffixes***

Not all English suffixes are Greek or Latin in origin. Old English (Anglo-Saxon) has left its mark on the formation of Modern English vocabulary as well.

<i>Old English Suffix</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>
-ard	possessor of	dullard, coward
-er, -ster	agent	doer, gangster
-less	without	toothless, worthless
-ful	full of	truthful
-some	full of	quarrelsome, handsome
-ish	somewhat	foolish
-ness	quality of, state of	happiness, largeness
-dom	state of being, domain of	kingdom, martyrdom
-hood	state, condition, character of	motherhood, neighborhood
-ship	state, condition, character of	kingship, kinship





## 4 : E X E R C I S E S

**A. What English adjectives are derived from the following Latin nouns? What is the current meaning of each adjective? Use the endings in “Adjective-Forming Suffixes Used with Latin Noun Stems” above. If necessary, check your dictionary.**

### Example

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Adjective</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
vulgus, vulgi	crowd	vulgar	crude, unrefined
puer, pueri	boy	puerile	immature, childish

<i>Latin Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Adjective</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
1. tempus, temporis	time	_____	_____
2. mundus, mundi	world	_____	_____
3. populus, populi	people	_____	_____
4. corpus, corporis	body	_____	_____
5. miles, militis	soldier	_____	_____
6. fabula, fabulae	story	_____	_____
7. lex, legis	law	_____	_____
8. nomen, nominis	name	_____	_____
9. ops, opis	wealth, power	_____	_____
10. verbum, verbi	word	_____	_____
11. stella, stellae	star	_____	_____

**Choose four of the adjectives that you derived from the nouns listed above and construct four sentences using those words. Make sure that each sentence demonstrates that you understand the meaning of the word. The sentence, of course, must be grammatically correct.**

<i>English Adjective Chosen</i>	<i>Sentence</i>
12. _____	_____
13. _____	_____
14. _____	_____
15. _____	_____

**B. Which English nouns are derived from the following Latin adjectives? What is the current meaning of each noun? Use the endings in “Noun-Forming Suffixes Used with Latin Nouns and Adjectives.” If necessary, consult your unabridged dictionary.**

**Example**

<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
avarum, avari	greedy	avarice	greed
forte, fortis	brave	bravery	moral strength, bravery

<i>Latin Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Noun</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
16. clarum, clari	clear	_____	_____
17. malum, mali	bad	_____	_____
18. breve, brevis	short	_____	_____
19. novum, novi	new	_____	_____
20. acre, acris	sharp	_____	_____
21. varium, varii	different	_____	_____
22. memor, memoris	mindful	_____	_____
23. sanctum, sancti	holy	_____	_____
24. grave, gravis	heavy	_____	_____

**Choose four of the nouns that you derived from the adjectives listed above and construct four sentences using those words. Make sure that each sentence demonstrates that you understand the meaning of the word. The sentence, of course, must be grammatically correct.**

<i>English Noun Chosen</i>	<i>Sentence</i>
25. _____	_____
26. _____	_____
27. _____	_____
28. _____	_____

**C. The following words have been made up, but they have been given Latin adjectival or noun endings in their English derivative forms. Identify each as either a noun or adjective and give the meaning of the suffix.**

	<i>Noun (N) or Adjective (A)?</i>	<i>Meaning of Suffix</i>
29. spragid	_____	_____
30. fulmatorium	_____	_____
31. granatary	_____	_____
32. crellacious	_____	_____
33. dractator	_____	_____
34. stractical	_____	_____
35. grenulent	_____	_____
36. lorbimony	_____	_____
37. traminiety	_____	_____
38. spranabile	_____	_____
39. muvacture	_____	_____
40. rembulist	_____	_____
41. quactitule	_____	_____
42. scrimitude	_____	_____

**D. What English nouns and adjectives are derived from the present stem of the following Latin verbs? What is the current usage of each noun or adjective? Use the endings in “Nouns and Adjectives Formed from the Present Stem of Latin Verbs” above. If necessary, consult your unabridged English dictionary.**

### Examples

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>English Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
vivo-vivere-victum	live	vive-	vivid	intense, full of life
valeo-valēre <sup>10</sup>	be strong, be healthy	valē-	valor	boldness, courage

10. Some Latin verbs do not have a perfect passive system.



	<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>English Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
43.	curro-currere-cursum	run	_____	_____	_____
44.	experior-experiri-expertum	try	_____	_____	_____
45.	recipio-recipientum	take back	_____	_____	_____
46.	admiror-admirari-admiratum	wonder at	_____	_____	_____
47.	includo-includere-inclusum	enclose	_____	_____	_____
48.	stupeo-stupēre-stupui	be stunned	_____	_____	_____
49.	sedeo-sedēre-sessum	sit	_____	_____	_____
50.	fallo-fallere-falsum	deceive	_____	_____	_____
51.	tolero-tolerare-toleratum	bear, support	_____	_____	_____
52.	solvo-solvere-solutum	loosen	_____	_____	_____

**Choose four of the English nouns or adjectives that you derived from the present stem of verbs listed above and construct four sentences using those words. Make sure that the sentence demonstrates that you understand the meaning of the word. The sentence, of course, must be grammatically correct.**

	<i>English Word Chosen</i>	<i>English Sentence</i>
53.	_____	_____
54.	_____	_____
55.	_____	_____
56.	_____	_____

**E. What English nouns and adjectives are derived from the perfect passive stem of the following Latin verbs? What is the current usage of each noun or adjective? Use the endings in “Noun- and Adjective-forming Suffixes with the Perfect Passive Stem of Latin Verbs” above. If necessary, consult your unabridged English dictionary.**

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Perfect Passive Stem</i>	<i>English Noun or Adjective</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
57. nascor-nasci-natum	be born	_____	_____	_____
58. lego-legere-lectum	read, choose	_____	_____	_____
59. scribo-scribere-scriptum	write	_____	_____	_____
60. morior-mori-mortuum	die	_____	_____	_____
61. sedeo-sedēre-sessum	sit	_____	_____	_____
62. fallo-fallere-falsum	deceive	_____	_____	_____
63. patior-pati-passum	suffer, bear	_____	_____	_____
64. sentio-sentire-sensum	feel	_____	_____	_____
65. solvo-solvere-solutum	loosen	_____	_____	_____
66. muto-mutare-mutatum	change	_____	_____	_____
67. frango-frangere-fractum	break	_____	_____	_____

**Choose four of the English nouns or adjectives that you derived from the perfect stem of verbs listed above and construct four sentences using those words. Make sure that each sentence demonstrates that you understand the meaning of the word. The sentence, of course, must be grammatically correct.**

<i>English Word Chosen</i>	<i>English Sentence</i>
68. _____	_____
69. _____	_____
70. _____	_____
71. _____	_____

**F. In the following sentences fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.**

72. His handwriting was so *illegible* that the teacher was not \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ his exam.
73. The doctor tried to *revivify* the patient but it was clear that the patient was no longer \_\_\_\_\_.
74. I was told that she had a *mortal* illness, but still I hoped that she would not \_\_\_\_\_.
75. She gave the document a *cursory* glance as her eyes \_\_\_\_\_ down the page.
76. The *mutability* of our circumstances proves that our lives are subject to constant \_\_\_\_\_.

**G. In the following sentences, fill in the blank with a Latin-based word that completes the meaning of the sentence. All these words are derived from the vocabulary that is found in this chapter. If you are unsure of the form of the word you should use, check your unabridged dictionary.**

Example: I knew that all his arguments were *fallacious*, but everyone else was *deceived* by them.

77. I asked him to \_\_\_\_\_ his thoughts, but he couldn't find the *words*.
78. They say that "\_\_\_\_\_ is the soul of wit," but some speakers never learn to keep their comments *short*.
79. He is the most \_\_\_\_\_ person I know. All he does is to *sit* around and do nothing all day long.
80. Although the pain was intense when I *broke* my arm, the doctor said it was not a serious \_\_\_\_\_.

**H. Fill in the blank with a word of the opposite meaning chosen from the list below. If you are unsure of the meaning of any of the words, check your unabridged dictionary.**

- |          |           |         |              |            |
|----------|-----------|---------|--------------|------------|
| scarce   | silent    | freedom | concrete     | rebellious |
| peaceful | secretive | poor    | otherworldly | separation |

81. juncture                      \_\_\_\_\_
82. copious                      \_\_\_\_\_

- 83. mundane \_\_\_\_\_
- 84. turbulent \_\_\_\_\_
- 85. vocal \_\_\_\_\_
- 86. docile \_\_\_\_\_
- 87. intangible \_\_\_\_\_
- 88. opulent \_\_\_\_\_
- 89. candid \_\_\_\_\_
- 90. servitude \_\_\_\_\_

**I. Identify the function (noun, adjective, or verb) of the italicized words in the following sentence: "The *spragid glormularity* of the *stractibulous bananatude* *oblifected* me."**

- 91. spragid \_\_\_\_\_
- 92. glormularity \_\_\_\_\_
- 93. stractibulous \_\_\_\_\_
- 94. bananatude \_\_\_\_\_
- 95. oblifected \_\_\_\_\_



# HOW GREEK WORKS



Greek magical papyrus. The snake swallowing its tail is a symbol of eternity.  
Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.

*“Graecum est. Non potest legi (It’s Greek. It cannot be read).”*

—Comment of a medieval scribe who could not decipher  
the Greek words found in his Latin manuscript

Like Latin, Greek is an inflected language with declensions and conjugations. Because most English words derived from Greek roots are learned borrowings, or because the Greek word passed into Latin before coming into English at a later time, there are not the same strict rules, as there are for Latin-based words, for the formation of Greek-based English vocabulary.<sup>1</sup>

THE GREEK ALPHABET

<i>Greek Letter</i>	<i>Greek Name</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>English Transliteration</i>
α, Α	ἄλφα (alpha)	a (short)	a
β, Β	βῆτα (beta)	b	b
γ, Γ	γάμμα (gamma)	g (hard)	g
δ, Δ	δέλτα (delta)	d	d
ε, Ε	ἕ ψιλόν (epsilon)	e (short)	e
ζ, Ζ	ζῆτα (zeta)	dz	z
η, Η	ἦτα (eta)	a (long)	a
θ, Θ	θῆτα (theta)	th	th
ι, Ι	ἰῶτα (iota)	I (short)	i
κ, Κ	κάππα (kappa)	k	c
λ, Λ	λάμβδα (lambda)	l	l
μ, Μ	μῦ (mu)	m	m
ν, Ν	νῦ (nu)	n	n
ξ, Ξ	ξῖ (xi)	x	x
ο, Ο	ὀ μικρόν (omicron)	o (short)	o
π, Π	πί (pi)	p	p
ρ, Ρ	ῥῶ (rho)	r	r or rh
σ, ς, Σ	σίγμα (sigma)	s	s
τ, Τ	ταῦ (tau)	t	t
υ, Υ	ὕψιλόν (upsilon)	u	u
φ, Φ	φῖ (phi)	f	ph
χ, Χ	χῖ (chi)	ch	ch
ψ, Ψ	ψῖ (psi)	ps	ps
ω, Ω	ωμέγα (omega)	o (long)	ö

1. For this reason, the genitive case of nouns and adjectives will be given only when it is the basis for the formation of the English derivative.

## RULES FOR TRANSLITERATING GREEK WORDS INTO ENGLISH

### 1. Diphthongs

<i>Diphthong<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Greek Example</i>	<i>English Transliteration</i>
αι	ae, e	φαινόμενον <sup>3</sup> Αἰθιοπία	phenomenon Ethiopia
αυ	au	αὐτό	auto (self)
ει	ei, i, e	χεῖρ	chir (hand)
ευ	eu	εὐλογία	eulogia (praise)
οι	oe, i, e	ἀμοιβή	ameba <i>or</i> amoeba (change)
ου	ou, u	Μοῦσα	Muse

### 2. Upsilon (υ) is usually transliterated as a *y*.

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
κύκλος	cyclos	circle
μῦθος	mythos	story, tale
σύμβολον	symbolon	sign, mark

### 3. When the upsilon is part of a diphthong, however, it is usually transliterated as a *u*.

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
τραῦμα	trauma	wound
ψεῦδον	pseudon	false

### 4. If a gamma (γ) appears before another gamma, kappa (κ), chi (χ), or xi (ξ), the gamma is pronounced in Greek and transliterated in English as an *n*.

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ἄγγελος	angelos	messenger
φάλαγξ	phalanx	phalanx (a body of troops)
ἄγκύρα	ankyra	anchor
βρόγχος	bronchos	windpipe

2. A *diphthong* is a sound formed by the combination of two vowels.

3. Most Greek words have an accent mark but this does not affect the transliteration of the word.



5. If a Greek word begins with a vowel, that vowel is marked with what is called a *breathing sign*. There are two breathing signs: *smooth* and *rough*. If the word has a smooth breathing sign, the vowel is given its “original” value; if it has a rough breathing sign, it is pronounced and transliterated with an initial *h* before the vowel.

<i>rough breathing sign</i> = ‘	ἁρμονία = harmonia (harmony)
	ὥρα = hora (time)
<i>smooth breathing sign</i> = ’	ἰῶτα = iota (iota)
	ἀντί = anti (against)

6. If a word begins with a *rho* (ρ), the rho always receives a rough breathing sign and is transliterated as *rh*. If it appears elsewhere in the word, it is transliterated as an *r*.

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ῥήτωρ	rhetor	speaker
ῥυθμός	rhythmos	arrangement, order
δέρμα	derma	skin
περί	peri	around

7. If a word begins with a *kappa* (κ), it is usually transliterated as a *c* or *k*.

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
κυνικός	cynikos	cynic
κλέπτω	klepto	steal

COGNATES

Because both Latin and Greek are members of the Indo-European family and therefore have a common ancestry, many Latin words have Greek cognates (words that are derived from the same earlier forms). Thus we find the following verbs in Greek that are related to some of the Latin verbs we met in chapter 3. These Greek verbs have the same meaning.

<i>Latin Verb</i>	<i>Greek Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ago	ago (ἄγω)	do, drive
fero	phero (φέρω)	bear, carry
sto	histemi (ἵστημι)	stand, cause to stand
do	didomi (δίδωμι)	give

***It's Greek to Me***

It's fairly obvious why we call the series of letters with which we construct English written words the *alphabet*, but Greek letters have made their way into our language in other ways.

- Among social animals such as wolves and chimpanzees, the term *alpha male* describes the “leader of the pack” who asserts his authority through intimidation and physical force. It is also used unflatteringly to describe a human male with the same qualities.
- The triangular shape of the capital form of the letter *delta* ( $\Delta$ ) gave its name to the geographical feature caused by the divergence of a river into two branches at its mouth.
- The Greek letter *iota* ( $\iota$ ) is so small and sometimes indistinct that it may be overlooked. Thus it has come to mean a very tiny measure. “I don’t care one *iota* if I never learn the Greek and Latin roots of English.”

And then, of course, there are all those scientific terms such as *gamma* rays, *muons*, and *taus* that physicists like to toss around in casual conversation.

**What did you say?** The ancient Greeks, who were resolutely monolingual and not at all interested in the systematic study of other languages, dismissively defined anyone who did not speak Greek as one who spoke a *glossa barbaros* (γλῶσσα βάρβαρος), that is, a “foreign language.”



This death mask, made of gold and dating to the sixteenth century BCE, was labeled by the archaeologist Heinrich Schliemann "the mask of Agamemnon." *National Museum, Athens.*



## 5 : EXERCISES

**A. Transliterate the following Greek words according to the rules given in this chapter. Which of these words came into English unchanged? If the word is unchanged, what is its current meaning? Even if the word does not exist in its transliterated form in English, can you figure out what it might mean in Greek? Use your dictionary as a research tool.**

### Examples

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Unchanged in English?</i>	<i>Possible English Derivative?</i>
θεός	theos	no	theology
γένεσις	genesis	yes	genesis

<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>Unchanged in English?</i>	<i>Possible English Derivative?</i>
1. δρᾶμα	_____	_____	_____
2. ξένος	_____	_____	_____
3. στρατηγός	_____	_____	_____
4. μηχανή	_____	_____	_____
5. παραγραφή	_____	_____	_____
6. σπέρμα	_____	_____	_____
7. βιβλίον	_____	_____	_____
8. καρδία	_____	_____	_____
9. κάθαρσις	_____	_____	_____
10. ἔμφασις	_____	_____	_____
11. μίασμα	_____	_____	_____
12. μανία	_____	_____	_____
13. διάλυσις	_____	_____	_____
14. ἀπάθεια	_____	_____	_____
15. θρόνος	_____	_____	_____
16. ἄξιωμα	_____	_____	_____
17. πολυγαμία	_____	_____	_____
18. λήθαργος	_____	_____	_____
19. ἵππος	_____	_____	_____

**B. Choose four of the transliterated words above (1–19) that have come into English unchanged and use that word in an English sentence. Check the rules of transliteration to help you solve the puzzle! If necessary, consult your unabridged English dictionary.**

	<i>English Word Chosen</i>	<i>Sentence</i>
20.	_____	_____
21.	_____	_____
22.	_____	_____
23.	_____	_____

## GREEK INTO ENGLISH



Delphi, the home of the oracle of the god Apollo.

*Numbering, preeminent among subtle devices,  
I found for them, and the combining of letters,  
For remembering all things, the mother of the Muses  
Skilled in all crafts.*

—AESCHYLUS (fifth-century BCE Greek playwright),  
*Prometheus Bound*, 11 459ff.

GREEK SUFFIXES

As we previously noted, the rules for the formation of Greek-based words in English are not as regular as for Latin-based vocabulary. Thus only those Greek suffixes most frequently found in English are given.

Adjective-Forming Suffixes

<i>Greek Adjectival Suffix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-ticon (-τικον)	pertaining to	-tic
-icon (-ικον)	pertaining to	-ic
-acon (-ακον)	pertaining to	-ac
-oides (-οειδης)	pertaining to	-oid <sup>1</sup>

Examples

<i>Greek Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Adjective</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
polis (πόλις)	city	politicon (πολιτικόν)	politic
cosmos (κόσμος)	order	cosmicon (κοσμικόν)	cosmic
cardia (καρδιά)	heart	cardiacon (καρδιακόν)	cardiac
aster (άστήρ)	star	asteroides (άστεροειδής)	asteroid

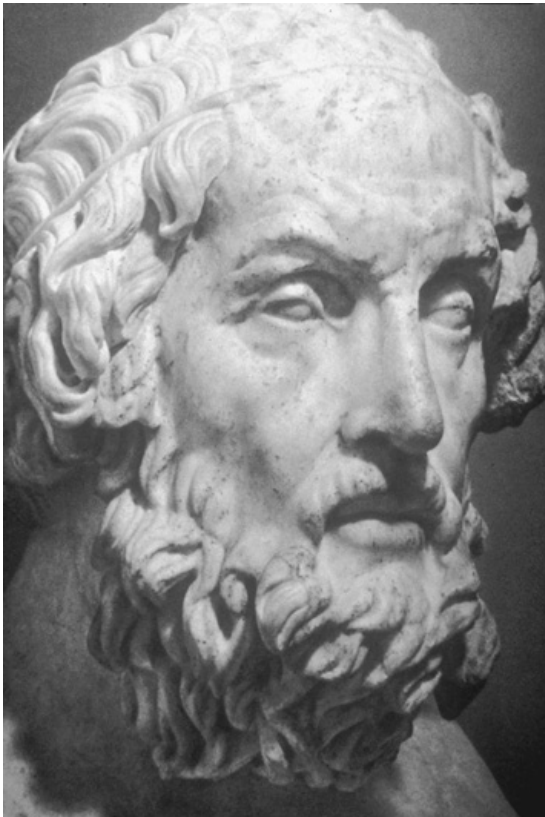
Noun-Forming Suffixes

<i>Greek Noun Suffix</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative Form</i>
-ia (ια)	quality of	-ia, -y
-ica, -tica (-ικα, -τικα)	art, science, study of	-ics, -tics
-tes (-της)	one who does	-t
-ter, -tor (-τηρ, -τωρ)	one who does	-tor
-ma (-μα)	result of	-ma, -me
-sis, -sia (-σις, -σια)	result of	-sis
-eion, -eon (-ειον, -αιον)	place for	-eum, -aeum (Latinized ending)
-iskos (-ισκος)	diminutive	-isk
-ismos (-ισμος)	abstract quality, belief in, theory of	-ism <sup>2</sup>

1. The adjectival suffix *-oid* is often used in English as a learned borrowing to mean *similar to* or *resembling*.

2. The noun-forming suffix *-ism* is often used as a learned borrowing to indicate a belief in or adherence to a particular point of view or ideology—political, religious, or otherwise, e.g., *communism*, *realism*, *monotheism*. The suffix *-ist* is used either to form an adjective or to indicate a person who subscribes to a particular position, e.g., a *communist*, *realist*, *monotheist*.

<i>Greek Noun or Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Noun</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
apologeomai (ἀπολογέομαι)	defend	apologia (ἀπολογία)	apology
polis (πόλις)	city	politica (πολιτικά)	politics
gymnazo (γυμνάζω)	exercise	gymnastes γυμναστής	gymnast
hypokrinomai (ὑποκρίνομαι)	answer, act	hypocrites (ὑποκριτής)	hypocrite
		hypocrisia (ὑποκρισία)	hypocrisy
aster (ἄστήρ)	star	asteriskos (ἀστερίσκος)	asterisk
baino (βαίνω)	go, walk	basis (βάσις)	basis
tithemi (τίθημι)	put, place	thema (θέμα)	theme
		thesis (θέσις)	thesis



The poet Homer, credited by the ancient Greeks with the creation of *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*.  
Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York.



## Learned Borrowings

<i>Greek Base</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Suffix Form</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
logos (λόγος)	word	-logia (-λογία)	-logy	art, science, study of
cratos (κράτος)	power	-cratia, -crasia (-κρατία), (-κρασία)	-cracy	rule by
			-crat	ruler
		-craticon (-κρατικόν)	-cratic	pertaining to rule
arche <sup>3</sup> (ἀρχή)	rule	-archia (-αρχία)	-archy	rule by
archon (ἄρχων)	ruler	-archos (-αρχος)	-arch	ruler
grapho (γράφω)	write	-graphia (-γραφία)	-graph	tool for writing
			-graphy	writing
gramma (γράμμα)	letter	-gramma (-γράμμα)	-gram	thing written
scopeo (σκοπέω)	look at		-scope	tool for viewing
			-scopy	viewing
metron (μέτρον)	measure	-metria (-μετρία)	-metry	science of measuring
			-meter	tool for measuring
			-metric	pertaining to measure
nomos (νόμος)	law, rule	-nomia (-νομία)	-nomy	rules of
nomicos (νόμικος)	conventional	-nomicon (-νομικόν)	-nomic	pertaining to rules
-izein <sup>4</sup>			-ize	verb-forming suffix to indicate action

3. Arche (ἀρχή) also means “beginning” or “first in authority.” When used as a prefix in English, it usually means “chief,” e.g., *archbishop*, *archenemy*, *architect*.

4. In Ancient Greek, *-izein* is a verb-forming suffix that denotes action. It is frequently used in English in the formation of neologisms such as *sanitize*, *customize*, etc. Neologisms are new words or expressions, which English is forming all the time.



## 6 : EXERCISES

**A. Transliterate each of the following Greek words and, using your unabridged dictionary, find an English derivative and its current usage.**

**Example**

<i>Greek Word and English Meaning</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
καρδία (heart)	cardia	cardiac	pertaining to the heart

<i>Greek Word and English Meaning</i>	<i>Transliteration</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
1. τόπος (place)	_____	_____	_____
2. σχολή (leisure)	_____	_____	_____
3. ἀγών (contest)	_____	_____	_____
4. ἔθνος (nation)	_____	_____	_____
5. κινέω (move)	_____	_____	_____
6. πρᾶγμα (business)	_____	_____	_____
7. αἵρεσις (choice)	_____	_____	_____
8. αἰτία (cause)	_____	_____	_____
9. ἐκκλησία (assembly)	_____	_____	_____
10. κλίνη (bed)	_____	_____	_____
11. ὀφθαλμός (eye)	_____	_____	_____
12. λίθος (stone)	_____	_____	_____
13. πόλεμος (war)	_____	_____	_____
14. κεφαλή (head)	_____	_____	_____
15. χρόνος (time)	_____	_____	_____

**B. Clearly anyone or anything can be in charge. What is each of the following forms of government?**

English Word	Form of Government	English Word	Form of Government
16. gastrocracy	_____	21. plutocracy	_____
17. patriarchy	_____	22. oligarchy	_____
18. ochlocracy	_____	23. hierarchy	_____
19. gynecocracy	_____	24. dyarchy	_____
20. matriarchy	_____	25. gerontocracy	_____

**C. Fill in each blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct. If you are not sure of the derivation, check your dictionary. Some of the Greek vocabulary is to be found in the exercises above. For example, “A microscope is a *tool* for viewing small objects.”**

26. Geology is the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_; geography is \_\_\_\_\_; geometry is \_\_\_\_\_.
27. An anarchist \_\_\_\_\_ a lack of \_\_\_\_\_.
28. A thermometer is an \_\_\_\_\_ heat. [thermos (θερμός) = warm]
29. Your *archenemy* is your \_\_\_\_\_ foe.
30. In many science-fiction movies, robots are called *androids* because they \_\_\_\_\_ humans. [aner, andros (άνήρ, άνδρός) = man]
31. *Dynamism* is \_\_\_\_\_ that all phenomena in the world can be explained by the action of force. [dynamis (δύναμις) = force, power]
32. What is the literal meaning of *basilisk*? (βασιλεύς = king) \_\_\_\_\_ What sort of creature was it thought to be? \_\_\_\_\_
33. An *ophthalmoscope* is an \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_.
34. In ancient Athens, the *polemarch* was the individual who was the \_\_\_\_\_ in times of \_\_\_\_\_.
35. *Topography* is literally \_\_\_\_\_ about \_\_\_\_\_. What is its current usage?

36. A *chronometer* is an \_\_\_\_\_.
37. *Gerontology* is \_\_\_\_\_.
38. Some students think that *scholastic* effort should be made only when they have \_\_\_\_\_.
39. A monolith is a monument that consists of a single stone. What is the current meaning of monolithic? \_\_\_\_\_ (λίθος = stone)
40. In 399 BCE, the Greek philosopher Socrates was put on trial in Athens on charges, among others, of corrupting the young. According to his pupil Plato, in court he gave a speech that we now call the *Apology*. Since Socrates would never have said that he was sorry for anything he had done, what was he doing in this speech? \_\_\_\_\_

**D. Construct a sentence using an English derivative of the following Greek words.**

41. πράγμα \_\_\_\_\_
42. αἰτία \_\_\_\_\_
43. ἄγων \_\_\_\_\_
44. χρόνος \_\_\_\_\_
45. κινέω \_\_\_\_\_



# LATIN AND GREEK PREFIXES



A sixth-century BCE bronze statue of the Greek hero Heracles. *National Museum, Athens.*

*And though thou hadst small Latine and less Greeke,  
From thence to honour thee, I would not seeke  
For names.*

—BEN JONSON (seventeenth-century English playwright and poet),  
“To the Memory of My Beloved, the Author Mr. William Shakespeare” (1623)

Prefixes formed from Latin and Greek prepositions are most often adverbial, that is, they qualify or modify some action that is described by the word to which they are attached.

### LATIN PREPOSITIONS

<i>Latin Preposition</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
ab, a	from, away from	ab-, a-	abduct, avert
ad <sup>1</sup>	to, toward, for	ac-, ad-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, as-, at-	accept, admit, aggression, allocate, announce, applaud, arrive, assume, attack
ante	before	ante-	antecedent
cum <sup>2</sup>	with, together	com-, col-, con-, cor-, co- <sup>3</sup>	compose, collect, convene, correct, cohere
circum	around	circum-	circumnavigate
contra <sup>4</sup>	against	contra-	contradict
de	down, from, about	de-	depose
ex, e	out of	ex-, e-, ef-	export, edict, effect
extra	outside	extra-	extraordinary
in	in, into, on	in-, il-, im-	incur, illusion, import
inter	between	inter-	interact, intervene
intra	within	intra-	intravenous
ob	to, against	ob-, oc-, of-, op-	object, occur, offer, oppose
per	through, by	per-	permit, pertain
post	after	post-	postpone
prae	before	pre-	predict, prefer
pro	in front of, on behalf of	pro-	propose, provide
sine	without	se-	secure, secluded

1. Certain consonants (such as *b*, *m*, and *n*) often take on the sound of the following consonant; e.g., *sub* + *pono* (place) > *suppono*, *supponere*, *suppositum* (place under). This is called *assimilation*. Sometimes there is only a partial assimilation of sounds; e.g., *n* before *p* becomes *m*, as in *compose*.

2. Sometimes the *Latin* prefixes *cum-* and *per-* (as well as the Greek *dia-*) serve merely to intensify the words to which they are affixed; e.g., *per-* + *facio* (do, make) > *perficio*, *perficere*, *perfectum* (do thoroughly, finish); and *cum-* + *cedo* (yield) > *concedo*, *concedere*, *concessum* (yield completely, give way).

3. The prefix *co-* is most often used as a learned borrowing, meaning “together” or “jointly”; e.g., *coworker*.

4. When the *Latin contra* has first passed through French before coming into English, it very often becomes *counter-*; e.g., *contra* + *mando* (order) > *countermand*.

<i>Latin Preposition</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
sub	under, in addition to	sub-, suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sus-	submit, success, suffer, suggest, suppose, suspend
super <sup>5</sup>	beyond, above	super-	supervise
trans	across	trans-, tra-	transmit, tradition
ultra <sup>6</sup>	beyond	ultra-	ultrasonic



Phoenix mosaic, third century CE. The phoenix was a mythical bird that was said to live for five hundred years and then consume itself in fire, only to be reborn out of the ashes. *Urfa, Turkey.*

5. When the Latin *super* has first passed through French before coming into English, it very often becomes *sur-*: e.g., *super* + *vivo* (live) > *survive*.

6. *Ultra* is never used as a prefix in Latin. It appears as a suffix in English only as a learned borrowing.



# 4. GREEK PREPOSITIONS

<i>Greek Preposition</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
amphi (ἀμφί)	around, on both sides, of both kinds	amphi-	amphitheater amphibian
ana (ἀνά)	up, backward, again	ana-	anagram analogy
anti (ἀντί)	against	anti-	antidote antipathy
apo (ἀπό)	from, away from	apo-, aph- <sup>7</sup>	apology apocalypse
cata (κατά)	down, away, concerning	cata-, cath-	catalog catastrophe catholic
dia (διά)	through	dia-	diameter
en (ἐν)	in	en-	endemic, empathy
ec (ἐκ)	out of	ec-, ex-	ecstasy, exodus
epi (ἐπί)	on, at, to, in addition to	epi-, eph-	epidemic, ephemeral
hyper (ὑπέρ) <sup>8</sup>	over, beyond, excessively	hyper-	hyperbole, hyperactive
hypo (ὑπό)	under, below, slightly	hypo-, hyph-	hypothesis, hyphen
meta (μετά)	with, after, beyond, change	meta-, meth-	metabolism, method
para (παρά)	beside, beyond, contrary to, irregular	para-	paradox, parallel, paranoia
peri (περί)	around, about	peri-	perimeter, periphery
pro (πρό)	before, in front of	pro-	problem, prophet
pros (πρός)	to, toward, in addition to	pros-	prosthesis
syn (σύν)	with, together	syn-, sym-, syl-, sys-	synthesis, sympathy, syllable, system

7. When placed before a word that begins with a rough breathing mark, the final vowel is dropped, *p* changes to *f*, and *t* changes to *q*.

8. Almost all uses of *hyper-* and *hypo-* in English compounds are learned borrowings and are used primarily in the formation of scientific and medical terminology.

## PREFIXES DERIVED FROM GREEK AND LATIN ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Many English compound words formed from the following Greek and Latin adjectives and adverbs are learned borrowings.

### Words of Measurement

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
acron (ἄκρον)	topmost	acro-	acropolis
ison (ἴσον)	equal	iso-	isosceles
aequum, aequi	equal	equi-	equilateral
auto (αὐτό)	self	auto-	autograph
homeon (ὁμοῖον)	similar	homeo-	homeopathic
homon (ὁμόν)	same	homo-	homogenize
macron (μακρόν)	large, long, excessive	macro-	macrocosm
mega (μέγα)	large, great	mega-	megaphone
megalon (μεγάλον)	large, great	megalo-	megalomaniac
magnum, magni	large, great	magni-	magnify
micron (μικρόν)	small	micro-	microphone
poly (πολύ)	much, many	poly-	polygamy
multum, multi	much, many	multi-	multiply
pan, pantos (πᾶν)	all	pan-, panto-	pantheon, pantomime
omne, omnis	all	omn-	omnivore
tele (τῆλε)	at a distance, far	tele-	telephone

### Words of Praise

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
eu (εὖ)	well	eu-	eulogy
bene	well	bene-	benefactor
philia (φιλία)	love	phil-, philo-	philanthropy philosophy
orthon (ὀρθόν)	straight	ortho-	orthodox
rectum, recti	straight, right	recti-	rectify

## Negatives

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
a- (α) <sup>9</sup>	not, lack of, absence	a-, an-	abyss, anemia
in- <sup>10</sup>	not	in-, il-, im-	innocuous, illegal, immoral
non- <sup>11</sup>	not	non-	nonresident
dis-	apart, away, reverse	dis-	disobedient, dispute
cacon (κακόν)	bad	caco-	cacophony
malum, mali	bad	mal-, male-	malefactor, malware
dys- (δυσ-)	bad, difficult	dys-	dyslexia, dyspeptic
miseo (μισέω)	hate	mis-, miso- <sup>12</sup>	misogyny, misanthrope
heteron (ἕτερον)	other, different	hetero-	heterosexual
retro	backward	retro-, re- <sup>13</sup>	retrograde, regress

## Odds and Ends

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
archeon (ἀρχαῖον)	old	archeo-	archaeology
paleon (παλαιόν)	old	paleo-	paleolithic
neon (νέον)	new	neo-	neophyte
crypton (κρυπτόν)	hidden	crypto-	cryptogram
quasi <sup>14</sup>	as if, resembling	quasi-	quasi-official

9. When *a-* is added to a word that begins with a vowel, an *n* is placed between the prefix and the root of the word; e.g., *a* + *arche* (rule) > *anarchy*.

10. There is, unfortunately, no way to distinguish between the use of *in-* as a prefix meaning *in* or *on* and its use as a negative.

11. *Non-* is very rarely used as a prefix in Latin.

12. There is another *mis-* prefix, derived from the Latin *minus* (less), that is used to indicate *wrong*, *bad*, *badly*.

13. *Retro-* is rarely used as a prefix in Latin compounds. The much more common prefix is *re-*.

14. There are no Latin compounds formed with *quasi-*. It is used only in compound English words.

**No Wonder I'm Confused!**

Mastering the orthography of English can be a difficult business because of the various influences on the language over time, and the existence of both homographs and homophones only add to the confusion.

*Homographs* are words that have the same written form but different meanings (and sometimes different pronunciations). They may or may not have the same etymological root.

1. *orient* is derived from *orior, oriri* = rise  
*morbid* is derived from *morbus, morbi* = sickness

Check your dictionary for different meanings of these words and how these meanings developed.

2. *Host* can mean either a very large army or a person who greets and entertains you. The former is derived from *hostis, hostis* = enemy; the latter from *hospes, hospitis* = guest or host.

Here are a few more to confuse you:

You are not *qualified*, so I will give you only *qualified* approval.

I *wind* my watch as I stand in the *wind*.

I hope that my *will will* reflect my *will*.

I *wound* my watch although I had a terrible *wound*.

*Homophones* are words that sound alike but are spelled differently (and have different meanings).

**Examples:**

1. I *threw* the ball *through* the window.
2. Don't *whine*, he said, as he drank my glass of *wine*.
3. She *knows* where her *nose* is.

**Impress Your Friends**

Some words are fun just to know. Here are a couple:

*obfuscate* = confuse or bewilder, especially in regard to the truth.

"The governor tends to obfuscate even when asked a direct question."

*obsequious* = overly willing to follow the will or desire of another, especially one's superiors.

"His obsequious behavior toward his boss made everyone think he was her slave."





## 7: EXERCISES

**A. In exercises 1–29, fill in the blanks with the literal meaning of each italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct. If you are not sure of the derivation, check your unabridged dictionary. For example, “A *promotion* moves you to the front; a *demotion* moves you back.”**

1. At a *colloquium*, individuals \_\_\_\_\_ one another.
2. An *extraterrestrial* being comes from \_\_\_\_\_.
3. *Circumstances* \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Your *supervisor* is \_\_\_\_\_ your work.
5. An *introvert* is an individual who has \_\_\_\_\_ himself.
6. A *supposition* is a statement that is \_\_\_\_\_ an argument. Can you figure out a Greek-based word that has exactly the same meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
7. In American history, “*ante bellum*” usually refers to the period \_\_\_\_\_ the Civil \_\_\_\_\_.
8. To *intervene* in an argument is to \_\_\_\_\_ the two sides.
9. If someone grabs you \_\_\_\_\_ the throat, you may *suffocate*.
10. An *agenda* is a list of things to be \_\_\_\_\_.
11. A person who *interferes* in your business \_\_\_\_\_ himself \_\_\_\_\_.
12. When the *onus* of responsibility is placed upon you, it becomes your \_\_\_\_\_.
13. A *sinecure* is a job \_\_\_\_\_ real responsibilities or duties.
14. An *obstacle* \_\_\_\_\_ you.
15. An *aqueduct* \_\_\_\_\_ from one place to another.
16. A person who lives in seclusion is closed \_\_\_\_\_ from the world.
17. A *circumlocution* is a polite way of \_\_\_\_\_ an unpleasant topic.
18. *Contrary* individuals are inclined to go \_\_\_\_\_ whatever the majority says.

19. A *postscript* is \_\_\_\_\_ the body of a letter.
20. A *permeable* substance allows other material to pass \_\_\_\_\_ it.
21. A *permanent* stain is one that will remain \_\_\_\_\_.
22. An *advertisement* \_\_\_\_\_ your attention \_\_\_\_\_ a product.
23. A *deposition* is a statement that has been \_\_\_\_\_ about an event.
24. What does *circa* 1920 mean? \_\_\_\_\_
25. I came to work *via* public *transportation*. In other words I was \_\_\_\_\_ town \_\_\_\_\_ city streets.
26. An *aggressive* person \_\_\_\_\_ you in a hostile manner.
27. I was given a *bonus* because I did a \_\_\_\_\_ job.
28. He lived in *squalor*; his apartment was so \_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't stand it.
29. He claimed he was a *pauper*, but he certainly didn't live like a \_\_\_\_\_ man.

**B. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct.**

30. An *amphitheater* has seats all \_\_\_\_\_.
31. An *apostate* is an individual who has \_\_\_\_\_ his faith.
32. A *peripatetic* individual likes to walk \_\_\_\_\_ all the time.
33. When you make a *synthesis* of various ideas, you \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.
34. An *antidote* is \_\_\_\_\_ a poison.
35. A *diagonal* line is drawn \_\_\_\_\_ an angle.
36. An *epitaph* is written \_\_\_\_\_ a tombstone.
37. *Metamorphosis* indicates \_\_\_\_\_ of shape or form.
38. A *paramedic* works \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor.
39. A *hypercritical* individual is \_\_\_\_\_ judgmental.

40. In a state of *ecstasy*, you may experience a psychological sensation of \_\_\_\_\_ your body.
41. A disease that is *endemic* is widespread \_\_\_\_\_ the population.
42. A *prophet* speaks the true outcome of an event \_\_\_\_\_ it happens.
43. There was an *exodus* toward the doors as the audience looked for a way \_\_\_\_\_.
44. In a *symphony*, all the sounds blend \_\_\_\_\_.

**C. As we have already seen, some Latin words changed their function when they entered into English. Here are some more Latin verb forms that have become English nouns. What are the current meanings of these Latin verbs?**

<i>Latin Verb Form</i>	<i>Literal Translation</i>	<i>Current Meaning</i>
45. <i>credo</i>	I believe	_____
46. <i>affidavit</i>	he has sworn	_____
47. <i>deficit</i>	it is lacking	_____
48. <i>ignoramus</i>	we do not know	_____
49. <i>caveat</i>	let him beware	_____
50. <i>caret</i>	it is lacking	_____
51. <i>fiat</i>	let it be done	_____

**D. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct.**

52. An *omnivorous* animal \_\_\_\_\_ kinds of food.
53. If you are a *neophyte* at tennis, you may make mistakes because you are \_\_\_\_\_ to the sport.
54. A creature that is *macrocephalic* has a \_\_\_\_\_ skull.
55. A *misogamist* \_\_\_\_\_ the very thought of marriage.
56. The population of New York City may be described as *heterogeneous* because it is made up of many \_\_\_\_\_ nationalities and ethnic groups.
57. A *benevolent* individual wishes you \_\_\_\_\_.



58. A *dyspeptic* individual may be irritable because she has \_\_\_\_\_ digestion.
59. A *polygynist* has \_\_\_\_\_ wives at the same time.
60. The *Pantheon* was ancient temple in Rome dedicated to \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_.
61. To be *magnanimous* means that you are generous and therefore have a \_\_\_\_\_ spirit.
62. If you are *abysmally* ignorant, your lack of knowledge is \_\_\_\_\_ any measure or depth.
63. A *retrospective* exhibit looks \_\_\_\_\_ at the whole of an artist's work.
64. A musical composition that is *euphonious* \_\_\_\_\_ to the ear.
65. A *micrometer* is an \_\_\_\_\_ distances.
66. An *Anglophile* \_\_\_\_\_ all things English.
67. An *autonomous* state is one that is \_\_\_\_\_.
68. A *cryptogram* is \_\_\_\_\_ whose meaning is \_\_\_\_\_.
69. An *archaeologist* \_\_\_\_\_ cultures.
70. A *rectilinear* argument moves along a \_\_\_\_\_ line.
71. The speech of an *incoherent* individual does \_\_\_\_\_ hold together.
72. "Please do not *desert* me in the *desert*" provides an example of a \_\_\_\_\_.
73. "He jumped into the *air* when he found out that he was *heir* to a fortune" provides an example of a \_\_\_\_\_.
74. What is the difference between an *immigrant* and an *emigrant*? \_\_\_\_\_

- E. What's in a name? *Onyma* (ὄνυμα) is the Greek word for *name*. Give the current meaning of each of the following compounds of *onyma* and cite an example of each.**

<i>Greek-Based Compound of Onyma</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>
75. acronym	_____	_____
76. homonym	_____	_____
77. antonym	_____	_____
78. synonym	_____	_____
79. anonymous	_____	_____
80. eponym	_____	_____

- F. Give the current English meaning and an English antonym of each of the following Latin-based words.**

<i>Latin-Based Word</i>	<i>Current English Meaning</i>	<i>English Antonym</i>
81. abhor	_____	_____
82. avert	_____	_____
83. adhere	_____	_____
84. accost	_____	_____
85. antediluvian	_____	_____
86. collude	_____	_____
87. deviate	_____	_____
88. emancipate	_____	_____
89. exacerbate	_____	_____
90. internecine	_____	_____
91. introspective	_____	_____
92. extrovert	_____	_____
93. oblivious	_____	_____
94. prevaricate	_____	_____
95. seduce	_____	_____

**G. Construct five sentences that contain one of the words listed above and that demonstrate you understand the meaning of the word. You need use only one word per sentence but will receive extra credit if you can include two words within a single sentence.**

<i>English Word or Words Chosen</i>		<i>English Sentence</i>
96.	_____	_____
97.	_____	_____
98.	_____	_____
99.	_____	_____
100.	_____	_____

**H. Give the English meaning of the words listed below (101–9) and then construct four sentences that contain one of the words listed below and demonstrate you understand the meaning of the word. You need use only one word per sentence but will receive extra credit for using two or more. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.**

<i>Greek-Based Word</i>		<i>English Meaning</i>
101.	anachronism	_____
102.	antithesis	_____
103.	catastrophe	_____
104.	empirical	_____
105.	ephemeral	_____
106.	hypothesis	_____
107.	hyperbole	_____
108.	paradigm	_____
109.	protagonist	_____

<i>English Word or Words Chosen</i>		<i>Sentence</i>
110.	_____	_____
111.	_____	_____
112.	_____	_____
113.	_____	_____

# LATIN AND GREEK NUMBERS



*The Tomb of the Diver, fifth-century BCE wall painting. Paestum, Italy.*

*“Ten is the very nature of number. The Greeks and all barbarians alike count up to ten, and having reached ten, revert again to the single unit.”*

—AETIUS (first-century CE Greek philosopher)

COUNTDOWN

The similarities among the words for the numbers 1 through 10 were one of the first clues that led scholars of comparative and historical linguistics to posit a common ancestry for what is now called the Indo-European family of languages.

arithmos ( ἀριθμός)	number
numerus, numeri	number

*Let Me Count the Ways (in Indo-European) . . .*

	<i>One</i>	<i>Two</i>	<i>Three</i>
Sanskrit	<i>ekas</i>	<i>dvau</i>	<i>trayah</i>
Persian	<i>yek</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>se</i>
Gaelic	<i>aon</i>	<i>dha</i>	<i>tri</i>
Albanian	<i>nje</i>	<i>dy</i>	<i>tre</i>
Pashto	<i>yaw</i>	<i>dwa</i>	<i>dre</i>
German	<i>ein</i>	<i>zwei</i>	<i>drei</i>
Russian	<i>odin</i>	<i>dva</i>	<i>tri</i>

LATIN NUMBERS

<i>Cardinal Number<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Roman Numeral</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
1. unum	I	uni-	uniform, unity
2. duo	II	duo- or du-	duality, duet
3. tres	III	tri-	triplicate, trilateral
4. quattuor	IV	quadri-	quadrangle
5. quinque	V	quingu-	quinquennial
6. sex	VI	sexi-, sex-	sextet
7. septem	VII	sept-	September <sup>2</sup>
8. octo	VIII	octo-, octa-	octet, octave
9. novem	IX	novem-, noven-	November
10. decem	X	decem-, deca-	December, decade
100. centum	C	centi-, cent-	centimeter, century
1,000. mille	M	milli-, mill-	millennium, millipede

1. A cardinal number is one that indicates quantity, e.g., *one* boy, *seven* elephants, *sixteen* children. An ordinal number is one that represents a position on a list, e.g., the *second* president, the *eighth* day, the *twenty-first* century.

2. But everyone knows that September is the ninth month of the year. So what happened?

### ***How Long Did You Say I Have to Wait Here?***

In the seventeenth century when an outbreak of bubonic plague spread across Europe bringing death and devastation, the rulers of Venice ruled that ships arriving from plague-infested places had to wait forty days before passengers could disembark in order to ensure that no one on the boat was infected with the disease. The Italian *quarantina giorni* (forty days) is derived from *quadraginta*, the Latin word for 40. What is the current meaning of the English word *quarantine*?

### **Examples of Roman Numerals**

I = 1	II = 2	III = 3
V = 5	VII = 7	X = 10
XI = 11	XIX = 19	XX = 20
XXV = 25	XXXVI = 36	LIII = 53
LIX = 59	LXIV = 64	LXXXVII = 87
XCIV = 94	C = 100	CLXXIX = 179
CCX = 210	CCCXLVII = 347	CDXVIII = 418
DLXVII = 567	MDCCCLXXXV = 1885	MCMLXXXIV = 1984

### ***It's Nothing***

Although they certainly understood the quality of “nothingness,” neither the Greeks nor the Romans had a symbol that indicated 0, or the absence of quantity. The arithmetic representation of 0 was devised by Hindu mathematicians and given an Arabic name (*sifr* = emptiness) by medieval Muslim scientists. The word passed into English in two forms: *cipher*<sup>3</sup> and *zero*.

<i>Latin Adjective or Noun</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>
nihil	nothing	nihilism
nullum, nullius	no, none, not any	nullify

3. What is the current meaning of *cipher*?

## Latin Ordinal Numbers

<i>Ordinal Number</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Example</i>
primum	first	primary, primitive
secundum	second	second, secondary
tertium	third	tertiary
quartum	fourth	quart, quarter
quintum	fifth	quintet, quintessence <sup>4</sup>
sextum	sixth	sextuple
septimum	seventh	septimal
octavum	eighth	octave
nonum	ninth	nonagenarian
decimum	tenth	decimal, decimate <sup>5</sup>

### *We the People*

In 1782 at the end of the American Revolutionary War, *E pluribus unum* was adopted as the official motto of the United States and inscribed on the Great Seal. You can find it on all American paper currency.

*E pluribus unum* = Out of many, one.

## Latin Numerical Adverbs and Adjectives

<i>Numerical Adverb or Adjective</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
solum, solius	single, alone	solī-	solitude
sesqui	one and one-half	sesqui-	sesquipedalian
bis	twice, in two ways	bi-	bicameral
semi- <sup>6</sup>	half	semi-	semiannual
ambo-	both	ambi-	ambidextrous

4. What is the current meaning of *quintessence* and what was its original meaning?

5. Check your dictionary to discover the original meaning of *decimate*.

6. *Semi-* is used only as a prefix in Latin. In English it can mean “one-half,” as in *semiannual* (“every one-half year”) but it often means “somewhat” or “partially”; e.g., *semiconscious*.

## GREEK NUMBERS

<i>Cardinal Numbers</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
1: hen (ἓν)	heno-	henotheist
monon (μόνον) <sup>7</sup>	mono-	monogram, monotheist
2: dyo (δύο)	dyo-, dy-	dyad
3: tris (τρεῖς)	tri-	triangle, trigonometry
4: tettara (τέτταρα)	tetra-	tetragon
5: pente (πέντε)	pent-, penta-	Pentagon, pentathlon
6: hex (ἕξ)	hexa-	hexameter
7: hepta (ἑπτὰ)	hepta-	heptagon
8: octo (ὀκτώ)	octo-, octa-	octopus, octagonal
9: ennea (ἐννέα)	ennea-	ennead
10: deca (δέκα)	deca-	decatalogue
1,000: chilioi (χίλιοι)	kilo-	kilogram, kilometer

## Greek Ordinal Numbers

<i>Greek Ordinal Numbers</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
proton (πρῶτον)	first	proto-	prototype
deuteron (δεύτερον)	second	deutero-	Deuteronomy

Other Greek ordinal numbers are rarely used in English compounds.

## Greek Numerical Adverbs

<i>Numerical Adverb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Combining Form</i>	<i>Example</i>
dis (δίς)	twice	di-	dilemma
hemi- (ἡμι-)	half	hemi-	hemisphere

7. The meaning of the Greek word *monon* is “alone” or “only.”



***The Years Fly By . . .***

If you want to note an anniversary, you can use the Latin numerical prefix with the combining form of the Latin noun for year.

annus, anni (year) > -ennial  
e.g., centum + annus = centennial

***It's Over***

He asked for a finite number of ideas, but his speech went on to infinity.

finio-finire-finitum = limit, fix; close

***So Stop Wasting Time***

The Romans called the point at which three roads meet a *trivium*, a term also used to describe a public street. Perhaps because it was out in the open and therefore common or perhaps because people would just hang out there, not talking about anything important, the topics of discussion could be described as *trivial* (via, viae = road).

***Or Perhaps I Can't Count That High***

The largest number in Greek expressed in a single word is *myrias*, *myriados*, which represents the number 10,000. But it also meant infinite or countless, which is the meaning it is given in current usage.

***It's More Than Enough***

Although the word *plethora* (πληθώρα) originally meant fullness, it now means an overabundance.

***It's Too Much***

The word *googol* was coined by the nine-year-old nephew of the 20th-century mathematician Edward Kasner, who defined it for him as “one followed by a hundred zeros.” It seems like an appropriate word for a nonsensical number. The search engine Google is a play on the word, since it claims to offer access to an uncountable amount of knowledge.

***How Much Is Two and Ten?***

The Roman numeral XII represents the number 12, or 10 + 2. The word in Latin for twelve is just that: *duo* plus *decem*, or *duodecim*. The word passed into French and eventually appeared as *douzaine*. How do you think that happened?



## 8 : EXERCISES

**A. Arrange the following words in numerical order as indicated by their Latin or Greek root. What is the meaning of each word? Consult your dictionary if you are unsure of the meaning, or etymology, of any word listed.**

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Ranking</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
1. trimester	_____	_____
2. octagon	_____	_____
3. quintuplet	_____	_____
4. primary	_____	_____
5. duality	_____	_____
6. September	_____	_____
7. millennium	_____	_____
8. percentage	_____	_____
9. semester	_____	_____
10. noon	_____	_____
11. unicycle	_____	_____
12. hemisphere	_____	_____
13. square	_____	_____
14. decimal	_____	_____
15. century	_____	_____
16. bigamy	_____	_____
17. hemidemisemiquaver	_____	_____

**B. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.**

### Examples

To *unify* a people is to *make* them into *one*.

A *deutero*gamist has married for the *second* time.

18. *Primates* are ranked \_\_\_\_\_ in the order of living beings.

19. A *trilogy* is a literary work composed of \_\_\_\_\_ parts.
20. A *quatrain* is a verse of poetry that has \_\_\_\_\_ lines.
21. A *sextet* has \_\_\_\_\_ members.
22. When will the *tricentennial* celebration of American independence take place? \_\_\_\_\_
23. *Protoplasm* is regarded as the \_\_\_\_\_ form of living matter.
24. When a chorus sings in *unison*, it sings with \_\_\_\_\_ voice.
25. The *Pentagon* is a \_\_\_\_\_-angled building.
26. A *monotheist* believes in \_\_\_\_\_ god.
27. In exactly two *decades*, what year will it be? Write the answer in Roman numerals. \_\_\_\_\_
28. If you are a *sextuplet*, how many siblings of your age do you have? \_\_\_\_\_
29. If a judge declares a contract *null and void*, what does this ruling mean? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
30. What is the difference in meaning between *ambivalent* and *ambiguous*? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
31. What is the difference between a *kilometer* and a *millimeter*? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
32. When an atomic bomb *annihilated* Hiroshima, Japan, in 1945, it reduced it \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
33. A *semiannual* event takes place \_\_\_\_\_.
34. A *bicameral* legislature has \_\_\_\_\_ chambers of lawmakers.
34. A *duplicious* individual is deceiving and tricky. What is the root of this word and how do you think it took on its current meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
36. Some people enjoy *solitude*, but I don't like being \_\_\_\_\_.
37. What is the meaning of *cipher* in mathematics? \_\_\_\_\_
38. What is its meaning when describing a person? \_\_\_\_\_
39. What is the present meaning of *plethora*? \_\_\_\_\_ Use it in a sentence. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**C. What are the French, Spanish, and Italian words for the numbers given below? If all else fails, you can find out by going online.**

<i>English</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	<i>Italian</i>
40. one	_____	_____	_____
41. two	_____	_____	_____
42. three	_____	_____	_____
43. four	_____	_____	_____
44. five	_____	_____	_____
45. six	_____	_____	_____
46. seven	_____	_____	_____
47. eight	_____	_____	_____
48. nine	_____	_____	_____
49. ten	_____	_____	_____
50. one hundred	_____	_____	_____
51. one thousand	_____	_____	_____

***Don't Be a Show-Off!***

Some people are afflicted with *sesquipedalianism*. They love using words that are one-and-one-half-feet long, taking delight in showing off and confusing you.

***Here We Go Again . . .***

A palindrome is a word or a sequence of words that reads, letter for letter, the same backward as forward, for example, "Was it a cat I saw?"

παλίνδρομος = running back again



# GOVERNMENT AND POLITICS



A philosopher, fourth century BCE. *Delphi Museum.*

*“Man is a political animal—that is,  
it is the nature of man to live in the city.”*

—ARISTOTLE, *Politics* 1.2

GREEK POLITICS

Many modern theories and forms of government (or at least the vocabulary we use to describe them) have their origins in the Greek and Roman political systems. Indeed, the Greeks had a name for every kind of polity, and at one time or another they seem to have experimented with all of them: monarchy, oligarchy, tyranny, democracy—all these words have etymological roots in Greek political thought.

Ancient Greece was divided into independent city-states, each of which had its own constitution, laws, and religious institutions. Each state (*polis*) fiercely guarded its autonomy, and every individual took his identity from his place of citizenship and its political, social, and religious ways of life. Although there were perhaps hundreds of these independent states in Greece, the two that dominated Greek political life in the sixth and fifth centuries BCE were Athens and Sparta. The two cities had radically different views of the meaning of law and power that determined the structure of their political institutions. Sparta held tenaciously to a way of life shaped by a conservative, oligarchic form of government and by compulsory military training that began at age seven. Athens, on the other hand, created, over the course of the sixth and fifth centuries BCE, a radical democracy whose governing council eventually had five hundred members, all selected by lot and who served terms of one year. It is perhaps, then, no surprise that in 431 BCE, Sparta and Athens went to war against each other. Although Sparta was eventually the military victor after nearly thirty years of intermittent warfare, both states, as well as their allies, were weakened by the conflict and neither ever recovered completely. In the fourth century BCE, Philip of Macedon, father of Alexander the Great, brought almost all the *poleis*<sup>1</sup> under his domination, and although nominally free, in reality the Greek cities lost their political autonomy. And finally, in 146 BCE, after Alexander’s successors had been overcome by the growing military power of Rome, Greece became yet another Roman province.

Greek Political Vocabulary

<i>Greek Word or Suffix</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
polis (πόλις)	city, state
demos (δῆμος)	the people
despotes (δεσπότης)	master, lord
oligoi (ὀλίγοι)	few
tyrannos (τύραννος)	absolute ruler
-cratia (-κρατία)	rule by
-archia (-αρχία)	rule by

1. *Poleis* is the plural form of *polis*.

***Politics, As Usual***

Ostracism, which now means a general exclusion from society or from a particular group, was originally a form of political banishment in ancient Athens. It was so named because the punishment was voted upon by writing the person's name on a piece of tile (ὄστρακον) and depositing it into a jar marked "Yes" or a jar marked "No." The Greek biographer Plutarch in his life of Aristides—a fifth-century BCE Athenian statesman and military leader who was famous for being a man of moral integrity—reports that when, due to a struggle for power in Athens, a vote was being taken on whether or not to exile Aristides, an illiterate countryman, not recognizing Aristides, handed his *ostrakon* to him and asked him to write, "Aristides." Aristides, amazed, asked what wrong Aristides had ever done him. "None at all," the man said. "I don't even know him, but I am thoroughly annoyed at hearing him being called 'the Just.'" When Aristides heard this, he did not respond but he wrote his name upon the *ostrakon* and handed it back.

ostrakon (ὄστρακον) = tile, potsherd

**ROMAN POLITICS**

According to tradition, after the founding of the city by the legendary Romulus and Remus<sup>2</sup> in 753 BCE, the first form of Roman government was monarchy, but after a revolution and the expulsion of the kings in 509 BCE, a republic was established that lasted until the end of the first century BCE. At that time, in the midst of deteriorating political and social conditions, an imperial form of government began to take root, although republican institutions, such as the Senate and the consulship, survived, at least in name, for many centuries. Of course, the emperor always kept his eye on political matters—and often his hand in the state treasury.

Roman republican and imperial structures have given their names to many parts of the American system of government. For example, the United States Senate takes its name from the Roman *Senatus*, which originally meant a group of old men, whereas Congress derives its name from a Latin verb that means "to walk together." And finally, the laws of this country "stand together" in the American *Constitution*.

---

2. Romulus and Remus were said have been the twin sons of a mortal woman and Mars, the Roman god of war.



Roman Political Vocabulary

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
civis, civis	citizen
cf. civitas, civitatis	state
congregior-congredi-congressum <sup>3</sup>	walk together
cf. gradior-gradī-gressum	walk
populus, populi	people
impero-imperare-imperatum	command, order
cf. imperium, imperii	power, command, empire
and imperator, imperatoris	commander, emperor
princeps, principis <sup>4</sup>	chief, leader
res publica <sup>5</sup>	public matter, republic
rex, regis	king
cf. rego-regere-rectum	rule
gubernator, gubernatoris	pilot, governor
senex, senis	old man
statuo-statuerē-statutum	cause to stand, set up
in compounds -stituerē, -stitutum	
cf. sto-stare-statum	stand
urbs, urbis	city
volvo-volvere-volutum	turn

Nothing Works

“Finally, I came to the conclusion that the condition of all existing states is bad—nothing can cure their constitutions but a miraculous reform assisted by good luck—and I was driven to assert, in praise of true philosophy, that nothing else can enable one to see what is right for states and for individuals, and that the troubles of mankind will never cease until either true and genuine philosophers attain political power or the rulers of states by some dispensation of providence become genuine philosophers.”

—PLATO (fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher), Seventh Letter

GOVERNMENTAL BUREAUCRACY

The Roman state was highly organized not only politically but economically and socially as well; and over time, the number of administrative offices grew larger and larger. Are you surprised?

3. *gradior-gradī-gressum* = walk. How many other compound verbs can you form using *gradior*?  
4. What are the Latin roots of this word?  
5. *Publica* is actually a contraction of *populica* (cf. *populus*).

*Just a Few Roman Political Offices*

*consul, consulis* = consul, the highest magistrate in the republic. Two were elected each year.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
consulo–consulere–consultum	consider, deliberate
consilium, consilii	deliberation, advice

*censor, censoris* = censor, the magistrate in charge of prosecuting crimes involving moral and political offenses and also responsible for the assessment of taxes and raising revenue for public works.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
censeo–censēre–censum	tax, assess

*tribuni plebis* = tribunes of the plebs, the magistrates charged with protecting the rights and interest of the plebeian class. The history of the Roman Republic was marked by a continuous struggle on the part of the plebs for economic and political rights.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
plebs, plebis	the “common” people

*dictator, dictatoris* = dictator. In times of extreme public danger, a dictator might be appointed by the Senate and given supreme power for a maximum of six months.

cf. *dico–dicere–dictum* = say, speak, declare

*pontifex maximus* = the high priest who was the head of all the official clergy and who presided over the religious affairs of the state.

The word *pontifex* actually means “bridge maker” (*pons, pontis* = bridge). The origin of the term is unclear, but some scholars believe that it originally derived from an individual skilled in the magic of bridge-making. Others argue that it came from the high priest’s function to act as a “bridge” between the human and the divine world.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
pontifex, pontificis	priest
maximus, maximi	greatest



Hadrian's villa at Tivoli, Italy. The Roman emperor Hadrian ruled 117–138 CE.

### ***Purity in Politics . . .***

The English word *candidate* derives from the fact that when a Roman ran for political office, he would wear a distinctive white toga (*toga candida*) while campaigning in the Forum (cf. *candeo-candēre* = glow, shine, be clear).

### ***But Not All That Is Pure . . .***

The Forum was the public square and center of Roman civic and religious life but it was also the place where politicians campaigned, debated, legislated, judged, and incessantly plotted against one another. It was there, on the Ides of March, 44 BCE, that the Roman general and dictator, Julius Caesar, was assassinated, the victim of a conspiracy of Roman senators and his supposed friend and ally Brutus. It is no wonder that in Shakespeare's play *Julius Caesar*, a fortune-teller warns Caesar, "Beware the Ides of March." Caesar's dying words, *Et tu, Brute* ("Even you, Brutus"), have come to mean an act of betrayal.

### *Only If the Signs Are Right*

Perhaps our political system would operate even more efficiently if we followed the Roman method of making decisions only when what they regarded as divine signs were favorable. The interpreters of these omens, omens that included the flight of birds, was the *augur*, and it was he who decided whether the *auspicia* allowed the Senate to act, a military leader to make an expedition, or a successful candidate to be installed, or inaugurated, into office.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
omen, ominis	sign, omen
augur, auguris	diviner, prophet
auspes, auspiciis	interpreter of future events using the flight of birds
cf. specio–specere–spectrum	look at
inauguro–inaugurare–inauguratum	take omens, consecrate, dedicate

### *Whose Side Are You On?*

A flight of birds that appeared on the right side was taken as a good omen but one that appeared on the left was a portent of serious trouble ahead.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
dexter, dexteri	on the right, skillful, favorable
sinister, sinistri	on the left, awkward, unfavorable
portentum, portenti	sign, omen

### ***United We Stand . . .***

The seal of the Roman government that appeared on all public documents and that was inscribed on coins, monuments, and the standards of the Roman army was the acronym SPQR, which stood for “Senatus Populusque Romanus.” The twentieth-century fascist dictator of Italy, Benito Mussolini, whose stated aim was to restore Rome to its former imperial greatness, ordered that SPQR be made visible everywhere in Rome. The result was that if you visit the city now, you will find this acronym engraved on many manhole covers.

### ***Divided We Fall***

The names of these social classes of Roman society also have become part of our political (and social) vocabulary. Originally these divisions seem to have been determined by birth, but in later times, membership in a particular class was often based on wealth.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
patricius, patricii cf. pater, patris	patrician, a member of the Roman nobility father
optimas (sing.), optimates (pl.)	the best, the most noble, those of high social standing
eques, equitis	horseman, knight

***We the People***

The Roman proletariat consisted of those Roman citizens who labored for wages. Too poor to own property, they made their contribution to society by “producing” children who would become part of the labor force.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
proles, prolis	offspring

**Who’s Giving Advice Here?**

A *council* and *counsel* both give advice, but the words have different Latin roots. Check your dictionary for their etymologies and differences in meaning.

**Theories of Social and Economic Organization with Classical Roots**

All of the following terms that describe modern social and economic systems were coined or developed their present meaning in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. What is the meaning of the suffix *-ism* in each of the following terms?

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
capitalism	caput, capitis	head
socialism	socius, socii	ally, companion
communism	commune, communis	common
fascism	fascis, fascis	stick

The *fascis* (plural) was a bundle of sticks, bound together, that was carried in front of the chief Roman magistrates as a symbol both of their power and of the unity of the Roman people.

**THE LAW**

One of the greatest and most lasting contributions of ancient Roman civilization to the development of European thought is the vast body of laws and institutions that form the basis of much of modern jurisprudence. This influence can be seen not only in the structure of many European law codes but also in the extensive use of Latin in the vocabulary of the modern legal system.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
codex, codicis	book
crimen, criminis	accusation, the crime of which one is accused
judex, judicis	judge
jus, juris	right, duty, justice
justitia, justitiae	righteousness
lex, legis	law

### **Latin Legal Terminology Used in Modern Law<sup>6</sup>**

<i>Latin Phrase</i>	<i>Latin Meaning</i>	<i>Modern Judicial Usage</i>
<i>alias</i>	at another time	an assumed name
<i>alibi</i>	elsewhere, in another place	a defense by which the person accused, in order to prove that he could not have committed the crime with which he is charged, offers evidence to show that he was not at the scene of the crime when the crime was committed
<i>bona fide</i>	in good faith	without fraud or deceit
<i>caveat emptor</i>	let the buyer beware	purchaser assumes the risk that goods might be defective or unsuitable for his or her needs
<i>de facto</i>	by fact	a state of affairs that exists actually and must be accepted for all purposes but that is illegal or illegitimate
<i>de jure</i>	by law	legitimate, lawful
<i>habeas corpus</i>	that you have the body	a court order that commands an individual or government official to produce the prisoner at a designated time and place so the court can determine the legality of custody

6. All definitions are taken from Black's *Law Dictionary* ([www.thelawdictionary.org](http://www.thelawdictionary.org)).

<i>Latin Phrase</i>	<i>Latin Meaning</i>	<i>Modern Judicial Usage</i>
<i>in loco parentis</i>	in place of the parent	the legal responsibility of a person or organization to assume some of the functions and responsibilities of a parent
<i>nolo contendere</i>	I do not wish to contest	a plea that has the same effect as a plea of guilty (as far as the criminal charge is concerned) but that is not to be considered an admission of guilt for any other purpose
<i>prima facie</i>	at first appearance	a lawsuit or criminal prosecution in which the evidence before trial is sufficient to prove the case unless there is substantial contradictory evidence
<i>pro bono publico</i>	for the public good	legal work undertaken for the public good, without charge, especially for a client without sufficient financial resources
<i>pro forma</i>	for the matter of form	something done to merely satisfy minimum or basic requirements

***What's in a Name?***

Words can very often take on meanings that are termed *pejorative* because they imply some sense of disparagement or scorn. The vocabulary of politics is filled with such words. During the 1980s, for example, the word *liberal* was used in some circles in a pejorative sense, while to describe someone as plebeian indicates that you think he is common or has poor taste. But American politicians were certainly not the first to use language in this way. The Late Latin word *villanus*, which originally meant a farm laborer, has become our English word *villain*, while the Latin *vulgus* (crowd) is the root of the English word *vulgar*. What social attitudes do such usages reveal?

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
pejor, pejoris	worse
<i>pejor</i> is the comparative form of <i>malus</i> (bad)	
villa, villae	farmhouse
vulgus, vulgi	the common people, the public, a crowd. The English word <i>mob</i> , meaning an unruly group, is derived from the Latin term <i>vulgus mobile</i> (a moving crowd).

**WAR AND PEACE**

The Roman legal system spread wherever the Roman armies conquered because victory meant the imposition of Roman customs and practices including, of course, the rule of Roman law. In addition, many military veterans, after completing their tour of duty, would settle in the regions where they had been stationed, thus further strengthening Roman control and cultural influence.



<u>Greek or Latin Word</u>	<u>English Meaning</u>	<u>English Derivative?</u>
auxilium, auxilii	help, aid; troops (plural)	_____
bellum, belli	war	_____
miles, militis	soldier	_____
pax, pacis	peace	_____
periculum, periculi	danger	_____
polemos (πόλεμος)	war	_____
vinco-vincere-victum	conquer	_____
provincia, provinciae	territory outside Italy	_____
	acquired by the Romans	_____
	and usually by force	_____

***Who's In Charge Here?***

Some military officers took their titles from the number of men under their command. How many were overseen by a *decanus*? How many by a *centurio*?



## 9 : EXERCISES

**A. In the following sentences, answer each question or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.**

1. What is a *meritocracy*? \_\_\_\_\_
2. What is a *plebiscite*? \_\_\_\_\_ Who participates in it? \_\_\_\_\_
3. What is the science of *demography*? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What was the original purpose of a *census*? \_\_\_\_\_
5. To whom should *regalia* properly belong? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
6. When I follow a sign that says, "This way to the egress," where do I end up? \_\_\_\_\_
7. The Roman statesman Cicero wrote a work titled *De Senectute*. What was it about? \_\_\_\_\_
8. If a person *pontificates*, he speaks in the manner of a \_\_\_\_\_. What is the current usage of this word? \_\_\_\_\_
9. He said he was *invincible*, but I knew that he could be easily \_\_\_\_\_.
10. What happens when *tyrannicide* is committed? \_\_\_\_\_
11. A *patrimony* is an inheritance from one's \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The *imperative* form of a verb indicates a \_\_\_\_\_.
13. *Civility* is the kind of behavior expected of a \_\_\_\_\_. What is the current usage of this word? \_\_\_\_\_
14. He wanted to become an *equestrian*, but he was terrified of \_\_\_\_\_.
15. What is the current meaning of *provincial*? \_\_\_\_\_
16. A person who behaves in a *servile* manner acts like a \_\_\_\_\_.
17. The function of a *legislature* is to \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_.

18. A society is group composed of \_\_\_\_\_.
19. An *aristocrat* believes in \_\_\_\_\_. What is the current usage of this word?  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. A *progressive* person is willing to \_\_\_\_\_.
21. A *retrograde* motion is one that \_\_\_\_\_.
22. Many newspapers claim to be the *vox populi*. What does that phrase mean? \_\_\_\_\_
23. A *demagogue* is able to \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ by arousing their emotions.
24. He crashed into a parked car on the day of his driving test. It was not a good *sign of what was to come*; in fact, you might describe it as \_\_\_\_\_.
25. What is the literal meaning of *metropolis*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
26. What is the Latin-based doublet of *royal*? \_\_\_\_\_
27. What is the literal meaning of *plebeian*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its pejorative meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
28. The *nominal* head of a committee is chairperson in \_\_\_\_\_ only.
29. If our next president were wise, she would \_\_\_\_\_ before her *inauguration*.
30. If a person speaks with *candor*, he makes his feelings \_\_\_\_\_.
31. What is the literal meaning of *prolific*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
32. When her boss told me that the signs of success were *auspicious*, what did she mean?  
\_\_\_\_\_
33. The enemy's *bellicose* statements made the people fear that \_\_\_\_\_ was approaching.
34. I advised her not to take that *perilous* route because it was \_\_\_\_\_.
35. *Auxiliary* policemen are \_\_\_\_\_ agents trained to \_\_\_\_\_ the regular force.
36. His behavior was so bad, that we felt the need to banish him from our club. What do we call that form of exclusion? \_\_\_\_\_.

37. *Strategy* should be planned by a \_\_\_\_\_. What is the current usage of this word? \_\_\_\_\_
38. His *polemical* attack made me feel that he was making \_\_\_\_\_ against me.
39. Inveterate habits are hard to break because they are \_\_\_\_\_.
40. The *militant* behavior of the protestors made them seem like \_\_\_\_\_.
41. When the Spanish explorer Balboa saw the *Pacific Ocean* for the first time, he gave it this name because he thought it was \_\_\_\_\_.
43. Both the Latin word *sinister* and the French word *gauche* have taken on pejorative meanings. What were their original meanings, and what does each mean now?
- |                  | Latin Word | French Word |
|------------------|------------|-------------|
|                  | sinister   | gauche      |
| original meaning | _____      | _____       |
| current meaning  | _____      | _____       |
44. In ancient Rome, the *patricians* were regarded as the \_\_\_\_\_ of the country. What is the current usage of the word? \_\_\_\_\_
45. Her boss was a *despot*. He thought he was \_\_\_\_\_ of the world.
46. An *injury* is an action that is \_\_\_\_\_.
47. What is the current usage of *codicil*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its literal meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
48. As the situation evolved, I knew it would \_\_\_\_\_ well.
49. What is the difference in meaning between *belligerent* and *bellicose*? \_\_\_\_\_
50. Each year a *polemarch* was elected by the ancient Athenians. What do you think his responsibilities were? \_\_\_\_\_

**B. What is the literal meaning of each of the following words and what is its current usage?**

	<i>English Word</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
51.	populous	_____	_____
52.	politic	_____	_____
53.	politics	_____	_____
54.	consulate	_____	_____
55.	senility	_____	_____
56.	remand	_____	_____
57.	demotic	_____	_____
58.	censure	_____	_____
59.	jurisprudence	_____	_____

**C. Many Latin phrases that had their origin in the field of jurisprudence have found their way into wider usage. Can you figure out which legal term found on pages 113–114 applies to each of the following situations?**

60. I had to prove I was somewhere else when the crime was committed. What I needed was a good \_\_\_\_\_.
61. When you go to a used car dealer, you really have to be careful about buying anything. It's always a matter of \_\_\_\_\_.
62. Although he denied that he had eaten the blueberry pie, the purple stains on his shirt established a very good \_\_\_\_\_ case against him.
63. Most colleges have no rules about students' personal lives because they feel that should not act \_\_\_\_\_.
64. Although the Supreme Court outlawed segregated schools \_\_\_\_\_, the schools can still exist in some areas \_\_\_\_\_.
65. The application for the job was very long and detailed, but my friend assured me that the place hired everyone and therefore the process was just \_\_\_\_\_.
66. He used so many different names at different times that he couldn't remember which was his own name and which was an \_\_\_\_\_.
67. *Per capita* income is measured \_\_\_\_\_.

67. A person accused of *infidelity* is \_\_\_\_\_.
68. When a dispute is *adjudicated*, it is decided by turning it over \_\_\_\_\_.
69. What is the difference in meaning between *incriminate* and *recriminate*? \_\_\_\_\_
70. A *statute* is a rule that has been \_\_\_\_\_ by a governing body.
71. I thought he was my friend, but when he \_\_\_\_\_ me, I sneered, "*Et tu, Brute.*"
72. Although in ancient Greek the word *despot* meant merely "master" or "lord," it has taken on a pejorative meaning in modern English usage. Why do you think this might have happened?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**D. Many Latin-based words in English have undergone many changes in spelling because they first passed into French. What are the Latin roots of the following words and what are their current usages?**

	<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>	<i>Current English Usage</i>
74.	loyal	_____	_____
75.	fiancé	_____	_____
76.	chapter	_____	_____
77.	assault	_____	_____
78.	ancestor	_____	_____
79.	surveillance	_____	_____
80.	flourish	_____	_____



# PSYCHOLOGY



Oedipus and the Sphinx, fifth century BCE. (Vatican Museum). Superstock.

*Why should a man fear where events of chance rule,  
and there is clear foreknowledge of nothing?*

*It is best to live without plan, however one might.*

*Do not fear marriage with your mother,  
for many men already have lain with their mothers in dreams.*

*But these things are nothing to the man who bears life easily.*

—SOPHOCLES (fifth-century BCE Greek playwright), *Oedipus Tyrannus*



MODERN THEORIES OF PSYCHOLOGY

The modern study of psychology includes the investigation of human (and animal) behavior in all its forms and manifestations although most laymen still tend to view it in the context of the psychoanalytic theories of human action and motivation developed by the early twentieth-century thinkers Sigmund Freud, Carl Jung, and their successors. The language of psychology has so permeated our contemporary vocabulary that many of these terms have lost their original, narrowly conceived, and specialized meanings. Like the terminology of all the modern sciences and technologies, the vocabulary is based primarily on learned borrowings from Greek and Latin.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
psyche (ψυχή)	soul, spirit
psycho- ( <i>as a learned borrowing</i> )	mind
mens, mentis <sup>1</sup>	mind
anima, animae	breath
animus, animi	soul, mind, courage, passion
persona, personae	mask, character (in a play)
sanum, sani	healthy, sane

**Soul Study**

In the earliest usage of the word *psychology* in English (the seventeenth century), it meant the study of things concerning the soul.

**Who Am I?** According to Sigmund Freud, the human psyche consists of three interactive components:

the id	<i>It</i> : the repository of our instinctual drives that are continuously striving for expression
the ego	<i>I</i> : that part of the psyche that reacts to and experiences the outside world; our sense of self; consciousness, memory
the superego	<i>Super</i> (above) + <i>ego</i> : that part of the personality concerned with ethics and shaped by the moral standards and social ideals of the community

1. *Mens, mentis* survives in the Romance languages as an adverbial ending—e.g., *dolcemente* (Italian), *dulcimente* (Spanish), and *doucement* (French), all of which mean “sweetly.” Each of these words is derived from the Latin phrase *dulci mente* (with a sweet mind).



The god of love, Cupid, and Psyche, the mortal girl he saved from death. *British Museum.*

### ANCIENT PSYCHOLOGICAL THEORY

In the classical world, many playwrights, poets, and even historians found their source material in ancient myths that vividly described the often complex psychological dynamics within the structure of the family. The Oedipus complex, as presented by Freud and based on the fifth-century BCE play *Oedipus Tyrannus* by Sophocles, is perhaps the most well-known of such conflicts, but Greek myth provides us with many other examples of the consequences of familial passions, examples that still seem to be psychologically valid 2,500 years later.

Thus the study of classical myth has illuminated sources of human behavior for modern students of psychology, many of whom see as a primary aim of Greek myths the exposition and resolution of the desires, needs, and conflicts that continue to drive our actions. Several characters from Greek myth, because of their extreme behavior, have given their names to a variety of psychological syndromes. Here are just a few.

*Narcissism*: excessive admiration of one's own physical or mental qualifications. The handsome Narcissus was punished by the gods for his pride and self-absorption. Caused by Nemesis, the goddess of retribution, to fall in love with his own reflection in

a pool, Narcissus could not bear to tear himself away and thus faded into nothingness. All that remained was the flower that carries his name.

*Electra complex:* In psychoanalytic theory, these are the symptoms said to be caused by the suppressed sexual desire of a daughter for her father. Electra, daughter of King Agamemnon, conspired with her brother Orestes to murder their mother, Clytemnestra, after Clytemnestra had killed the king.

*Oedipus complex:* According to Freud, this is the desire of the child for sexual gratification with the parent of the opposite sex. At the same time, the child often feels an intense dislike of the other parent. Oedipus, as you will recall, unwittingly (perhaps) killed his father and married his mother. But then again, as Jocasta, Oedipus’s mother (and wife), says, “Many men already have lain with their mothers in dreams.”

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
genea (γενεά)	family	genealogy
familia, familiae	family	familial, familiar
pater (πατήρ)	father	patriarch
pater, patris	father	patron, paternity
mater (μήτηρ)	mother	matriarch
mater, matris	mother	matrilineal
soror, sororis	sister	sorority
frater, fratris	brother	fratricide
filius, filii	son	filial, affiliate
filia, filiae	daughter	

***Be Nice to Your Mother***

The Latin expression *alma mater*, which means “nourishing mother,” was the term used by ancient Romans to describe their country. Today we apply the term to the schools we have attended because their role is to foster and nourish us intellectually. When you graduate, you can say that having been nourished by education, you are an *alumnus* (plural *alumni*) if you’re male or an *alumna* (plural *alumnae*) if you’re female. *Alma*, *alumnus*, and *alumna* are derived from *alo-alere* = nourish.

**LOVE AND MARRIAGE**

In Greek myth, marriage often proves to be dangerous, indeed, even fatal: for example, Clytemnestra killed her husband Agamemnon upon his return from the Trojan War, although some argue that she did so with good cause. Agamemnon had sacrificed their daughter Iphigeneia before setting off for Troy and then brought back a Trojan

princess, Cassandra, as part of his booty. Medea obtained the Golden Fleece for the Greek hero Jason after he promised her marriage, but she murdered their children when Jason divorced her in order to marry another woman (whom Medea also murdered).

<i>Latin or Greek Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
gamos (γάμος)	marriage	monogamy
matrimonium, matrimonii	marriage	matrimony
gyne, gynecos (γυνή)	woman, wife	gynecology
uxor, uxoris	wife	uxorious
aner, andros (άνήρ)	man, husband	androgyny
maritus, mariti	husband	marital
divortium, divortii	divorce	divorce
cf. verto-vertere-versum	turn (verb)	vertigo
dialysis (διάλυσις)	divorce	dialysis



Etruscan sarcophagus lid depicting a wife and her husband, sixth century BCE. Villa Giulia Museum, Rome.

STATES OF FEELING<sup>2</sup>

Love and Desire

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
amor, amoris	love	amorous
amicus, amici	friend	amicable
cupido, cupidinis	longing, desire	cupidity
philia (φιλία)	affection, friendship	
phile-, -phile (used as noun-forming prefix or suffix in English)	loving	bibliophile, philharmonic
eros (ἔρως)	desire	erotic

Hatred and Disapproval

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
odium, odii	hatred	odious
hostile, hostilis	enemy (adjective)	hostile
hostis, hostis	enemy (noun)	host
fallo-fallere-falsum	deceive	fallacy
pseudon (ψεύδων)	lie	
pseudo- (prefix used as a learned borrowing)	false	pseudonym

**Am I Ever Confused . . .** The Roman poet Catullus perhaps accurately described our sometimes conflicting feelings about emotional entanglements. A poem dedicated to his lover begins *Odi et amo*. See if you can figure out what this line means.

**Oh What a Tangled Web We Weave . . .** Perhaps the worst offense against the divine was *hybris*, an expression of insolence so delusional that it might lead one to believe that one’s strength or power was equal to that of the gods. Needless to say, it was always punished. According to Greek myth, Arachne was a beautiful young girl who boasted that her spinning was finer than that of Athena. The two had a contest, and indeed, the work of the mortal girl was better. The goddess flew into a rage and began beating poor Arachne who, in despair, hung herself. But in a final act of vengeance for Arachne’s *hybris*, Athena turned Arachne into a spider. But Arachne’s talent survived her transformation, and she continues to spin even now.

*Arachne* (ἀράχνη) = spider  
*hybris* (ὑβρις) = shamelessness, or in Greek myth, believing that one is the equal to the gods

2. Check chapter 6 for other prefixes we have already learned that indicate states of feeling.

***I'm Okay. Are You Okay?***

Of course, our emotions and behavior may seem to others to be abnormal, and one person's fear may be another's madness or uncontrollable desire.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
mania (μανία)	madness
phobos (φόβος)	fear
timeo–timēre	be afraid
timor, timoris	fear
insania, insaniae	madness
cf. sanum, sani	healthy

***It's My Fault***

If you need to apologize but want to show off at the same time, you can always say *mea culpa*.

*culpa, culpa* = fault, blame

*No, It's Not.* The legal term *non compos mentis* can be applied to a mentally ill individual who may not have the capacity to reason or to manage his own affairs. It is sometimes used as a defense argument for a plea that the defendant cannot be held legally responsible for his actions.

*Non compos mentis* = not having control of the mind (not of sound mind)

**THE FOUR HUMORS**

In antiquity and in the Middle Ages, it was commonly believed by medical practitioners that the body contained four different fluids, or humors. They were yellow bile, black bile, blood, and phlegm. Doctors said that these four humors, when in proper balance, produced good health, but an excess or deficiency of any one of them could cause both physical and mental illness. Even today, derivatives of these words are not only used to describe moods and personality types but have become part of the modern psychiatric vocabulary.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
chole (χόλη)	yellow bile	choleric	angry
bilis, bilis	yellow bile	bilious	irritable
melancholia (μελαγχολία)	black bile	melancholy	deep sadness
cf. melas, melanos	black		
phlegma (φλέγμα)	phlegm	phlegmatic	apathetic, slow
sanguis, sanguinis	blood	sanguine	cheerful, hopeful

STAR WARS

There were other theories of personality and behavior in antiquity. For example, many people believed (and some still do) that the planets and other heavenly bodies affect human behavior and health and that individuals born under the signs of particular planets share the temperaments of the gods who ruled over those planets and who gave the planets their names.

*The Planets and Roman Deities*

<i>Planet/God</i>	<i>Roman Name</i>	<i>Function</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
Jupiter	Juppiter, Jovis	ruler of the gods who thus had every reason to be happy	jovial
Mars	Mars, Martis	god of war	martial
Mercury	Mercurius, Mercurii	winged messenger of the gods, always on the move	mercurial
Moon <sup>3</sup>	Luna, Lunae	goddess of the moon	lunatic
Saturn	Saturnus, Saturni	ruler of the gloomy underworld	saturnine
Venus	Venus, Veneris	goddess of love and sexual desire	venereal

But other gods could also affect human and animal behavior. Pan, the Greek god of flocks and herds, liked to play his pipes in the countryside, and the shrill, high notes would cause the animals to act in peculiar ways. It was also said that he could overwhelm his enemies merely by shouting, for his cry would cause them to feel sudden, unreasonable terror, or *panic*.

3. In the ancient world, many cultures considered the Sun and the Moon planets. The waxing and waning of the moon was said to affect an individual's behavior and state of mind.

## SCIENCE AND THE HUMAN MIND

Of course, society today is obsessed with precision and scientific measurement even in the realm of human behavior. Modern psychology has devised all sorts of means to analyze how and why we act and has developed systems by which human intelligence is thought to be accurately measured. The Greeks and Romans were not so precise in their measurements, but we still use their vocabulary to describe levels of intellectual ability. Who knows? Perhaps the Greeks and Romans were smarter than we are.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
intellego-intellegere-intellectum cf. lego-legere-lectum	understand, distinguish choose	intelligence, intellect
idion (ἴδιον)	one's own, private	idiosyncrasy
idio- (used as a prefix in English)	peculiar to	
idiotes (ἰδιώτης)	private citizen	idiot, idiotic
imbecillum, imbecilli cf. baculum, baculi	weak stick, rod	imbecile bacillus
moron (μωρόν)	foolish, stupid	moron
sophon (σοφόν)	wise	sophomore

***You're an Idiot!***

The word *idiotes* (ἰδιώτης) was applied to those who cared only for their private affairs and did not participate in public life; thus, its meaning became pejorative.

***Don't Be Foolish***

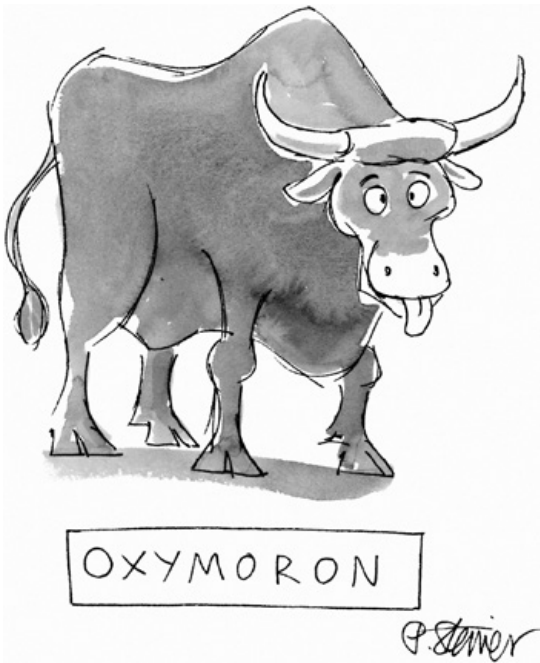
An *oxymoron* is a figure of speech that joins two terms that are contradictory. Here are some examples.

"Jumbo shrimp are pretty ugly."

"He is clearly confused."

ὀξύς = clever, sharp





Oxymoron. Peter Steiner, *The New Yorker* Collection 2000, [www.cartoonbank.com](http://www.cartoonbank.com).

***Compared to What?***

“I’m good!” “She’s better than you!” “You’re the worst!” (at least adjectivally speaking). The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives can also have English derivatives.

<i>Positive</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus = good	melior = better	optimus = best
exter = outside	exterior = outer	extremus = outermost, farthest
magnus = large	major = larger	maximus = largest
malus = bad	pejor = worse	pessimus = worst
multus = much	plus, pluris = more	plurimus = most
parvus = small	minor, minus = smaller	minimus = smallest
superus = above	superior = higher	supremus or summus = highest
ulter = beyond	ulterior = farther	ultimus = farthest, last

The preceding adjectives are irregular in the formation of their comparative and superlative forms. The regular superlative ending is *-issimus* (*-issima*, *-issimum*). How does that ending appear in the various Romance languages?

4. In this section, the masculine forms of the adjectives are used.



## 10: EXERCISES

**A. In the following questions, fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentences are grammatically correct.**

1. A *magnifying* glass \_\_\_\_\_ objects \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The *minimum* wage is the \_\_\_\_\_ amount one can be paid.
3. The *mayor* of the city is supposed to have \_\_\_\_\_ power than other officials.
4. Someone who is *demented* is \_\_\_\_\_ his \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Our *personalities* are really just \_\_\_\_\_.
6. In a *sorority*, the members consider themselves \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If you name your dog *Fido*, you expect him to be \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A *misogamist* \_\_\_\_\_.
9. *Cupid* was the Roman god of \_\_\_\_\_.
10. *Inanimate* objects do \_\_\_\_\_ have \_\_\_\_\_.
11. *Genealogy* is \_\_\_\_\_.
12. A person with a *martial* disposition enjoys \_\_\_\_\_.
13. An *egotist* is an individual whose favorite pronoun is \_\_\_\_\_.
14. To *ameliorate* a situation is to make it \_\_\_\_\_.
15. When philosophers search for the eternal verities, they are looking for those ideas that are always \_\_\_\_\_.
16. An *ultimatum* is a \_\_\_\_\_ proposal or demand.
17. A *pessimist* is always sure that the \_\_\_\_\_ will happen.
18. An *optimist* always thinks the \_\_\_\_\_ about circumstances.
19. He was so arrogant that even his friends thought him guilty of \_\_\_\_\_.

20. He was found guilty of *bigamy* when he admitted that he had \_\_\_\_\_.
21. A *malevolent* individual wishes to act in a \_\_\_\_\_ manner.
22. His *odious* behavior caused everyone to \_\_\_\_\_ him.
23. *Idiosyncratic* behavior is \_\_\_\_\_ an individual.
24. A *Francophile* \_\_\_\_\_ all things French.
25. The *pseudonymous* author used a \_\_\_\_\_ because he did not wish to reveal his identity.
26. *Psychosis* is a diseased condition of the \_\_\_\_\_.
27. I knew I had performed badly, but his *pejorative* comments made me feel \_\_\_\_\_.

**B. Answer the following questions. If you are not sure of the answers, check your unabridged dictionary.**

28. Philosophers have always discussed the *summum bonum*. What is it? \_\_\_\_\_
29. What crime are you guilty of if you kill your brother? \_\_\_\_\_
30. Where should your *superiors* be? \_\_\_\_\_
31. In the counting of votes, what is the difference between a *plurality* and a *majority*? \_\_\_\_\_
32. What is the literal meaning of *matriarchy*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
33. What is the literal meaning of *animus*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
34. What is the difference in meaning between *amiable* and *amicable*? \_\_\_\_\_
35. What is the meaning of the Latin phrase *persona non grata*? \_\_\_\_\_
36. What do the etymologies of the words *matrimony* and *matron* tell us about the ancient Roman understanding of the purpose of marriage? \_\_\_\_\_
37. Their marital bliss was shattered when he committed *uxoricide*. What had he done? \_\_\_\_\_
38. What kind of cell is a *gamete*? \_\_\_\_\_
39. What is the literal meaning of *patrimony*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_

40. I know it's not really true, but it seems to me that every time the *moon* is full, people act like \_\_\_\_\_.
41. His *moronic* behavior convinced me that he was a \_\_\_\_\_.
42. How would you characterize someone whose personality could be characterized as jovial? \_\_\_\_\_ saturnine? \_\_\_\_\_ mercurial? \_\_\_\_\_

**C. What are the following fears, forms of madness, or desires?**

- |                    |       |                       |       |
|--------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|
| 43. monomania      | _____ | 51. egomania          | _____ |
| 44. megalomania    | _____ | 52. dipsomania        | _____ |
| 45. pyromania      | _____ | 53. kleptomania       | _____ |
| 46. gamophobia     | _____ | 54. agoraphobia       | _____ |
| 47. xenophobia     | _____ | 55. acrophobia        | _____ |
| 48. claustrophobia | _____ | 56. bibliomania       | _____ |
| 49. ailurophobia   | _____ | 57. gynophobia        | _____ |
| 50. ponophobia     | _____ | 58. triskaidekaphobia | _____ |

**D. By now you should be able to recognize Romance language cognates of Latin words. Without consulting a dictionary, see if you can figure out the English meanings of each of the following French (Fr.), Spanish (S.), or Italian (I.) words.**

- |                            |       |                           |       |
|----------------------------|-------|---------------------------|-------|
| 59. rey (S. noun)          | _____ | 65. dire (Fr. verb)       | _____ |
| 60. amigo (S. noun)        | _____ | 66. odio (I. and S. noun) | _____ |
| 61. malo (S. adjective)    | _____ | 67. con (S. and I. prep.) | _____ |
| 62. animato (I. adjective) | _____ | 68. padre (S. noun)       | _____ |
| 63. faire (Fr. verb)       | _____ | 69. verdad (S. adjective) | _____ |
| 64. fratello (I. noun)     | _____ |                           |       |



## THE SOCIAL SCIENCES



Triumphal arch of the emperor Septimius Severus (193–211 CE). Triumphal arches were commonly erected to commemorate military victories. *Rome*.

*“Homo sum. Humani nihil a mē alienum puto*  
[I am human. I think that nothing human is strange to me].”

—TERENCE (second-century BCE Roman playwright), *The Self-Tormentor*

THEORY AND PRACTICE

In many college and university catalogs, the departments of political science and psychology can be found under the heading of the social sciences, those disciplines whose practitioners observe, analyze, and formulate theories about the behavior of people in specific groups and situations, individuals in their relationship to others, and the etiology of other kinds of social phenomena. Some of the social sciences are relatively new—the term *sociology* was first used in the early nineteenth century to mean the scientific study of society—while others, such as anthropology, have their roots in ancient Greek curiosity about the non-Greek world.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
etia (αἰτία)	cause
solvo-solvere-solutum	loosen, untie, release
phenomenon (φαινόμενον), phenomena (pl.)	a thing come to light or appearing to be so
socius, socii	ally, companion
theoria (θεωρία)	viewing, speculation, contemplation
modus, modi	measure, manner, way

Much more elegant synonyms for the Latin-based *model* are the Greek-based *paradigm* and *schema*.

schema, schemata (σχῆμα)	form, shape, figure
paradigma (παράδειγμα)	pattern, model

ANTHROPOLOGY

*“It is clear that the most gold by far is in the northern part of Europe, but how it is obtained, I cannot say with certainty. It is said that the one-eyed Arimaspians steal it from the griffins; but I do not believe in one-eyed men who in all other ways are like the rest of men.”*

—HERODOTUS (fifth-century BCE Greek historian), *Inquiries* iii.116

Anthropology is the study of human culture in all its aspects: social organization, economic and political systems, linguistics, and prehistory. Although the ancient Greeks were intensely curious about the customs and practices of non-Greeks (whom they lumped together under the general heading of *barbaroi*<sup>1</sup> (βάρβαροι), it was not until the eighteenth century that the modern discipline of anthropology began

1. The etymology of this word and its meaning to the ancient Greeks are a matter of dispute, but certainly in modern English usage it has taken on a pejorative meaning.

to take shape. In part it found its intellectual origins in the ideal of the European Enlightenment of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries—one that emphasized reason over tradition and taught that scientific methods could be applied to the study of human society—and in part because colonialism brought Europeans into direct contact with the indigenous cultures of North and South America, Africa, and Asia. It was believed by these earliest practitioners of anthropology that the origins of the structures of modern European society could be understood by exploring those of the cultures that they considered to be less developed or even primitive.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
anthropos (ἄνθρωπος)	man, mankind	anthropology
barbaroi (βάρβαροι)	all who were not Greek	barbarian
colo-colere-cultum	till the soil, inhabit, practice	cultivate
cf. colonia, coloniae	an estate, a settlement	colonial
cf. cultura, culturae	cultivation, culture	cultural
ethnos (ἔθνος)	nation, people	ethnology
cf. ethnicon (ἔθνικον)	foreign	ethnic
primitivum, primitive	the earliest of its kind	primitive

*“For if it were proposed to all peoples to choose the best customs out of all, after close examination, they would each choose their own as best.”*

—HERODOTUS (fifth-century BCE Greek historian), *Inquiries* iii.38

### ***Monkey See, Monkey Do***

*“Culture is roughly anything we do that monkeys don’t.”*

—attributed to Lord Raglan (nineteenth-century British general)

## **SOCIOLOGY**

Sociology, yet another product of the European Enlightenment, had its origins in the attempt to apply the rational methodology of the natural sciences to the study of the social lives of people, groups, and societies. Today the discipline focuses on the study of social behavior through the empirical and systematic examination of social institutions and organizations that influence human action and cultural identity.



<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
empiron (ἐμπειρον)	experienced	empirical
organon (ὄργανον)	instrument, tool, work, project	organic, organism
signum, signi	sign, seal, mark	signal
systema (σύστημα)	the whole, composition	systemic
methodos (μέθοδος)	pursuit of knowledge	methodology

**Behave Yourself!**

One line of sociological inquiry is the study of the habits, manners, and customs of a community or social group by investigating what kinds of behavior, actions, and practices are acceptable or unacceptable to its members. These shared habits, manners, and customs are labeled by sociologists the *mores* of a culture.

*mores, morum* (pl.) = conduct  
cf. *morale, moralis* = ethical, moral  
*ethos* (ἦθος) = custom, usage  
*ethicon* (ἠθικόν) = showing moral character

**Utopia:**

The social sciences sometimes make a claim for the relevance and applicability of their models to the solution of human social problems. Nevertheless, despite the efforts of sociologists, political theorists, economists, and other social thinkers, we are still faced with the paradox that our scientific study of human behavior, in all its forms, has not yet produced the ideal society. Perhaps, sadly, sixteenth-century philosopher Sir Thomas More was correct in calling his imaginary island that had a perfect political and social system Utopia.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
plico–plicere–plicatum	fold	application, explicit
idea (ιδέα)	form, class, kind	ideology
topos (τόπος)	place, topic	topical

ECONOMICS

“He thought that there was no other kind of enjoyment of riches and money than extravagance, and that only stingy and despicable men kept a correct account of what they spent, while fine and truly great men wasted and squandered.”  
—SUETONIUS (second-century CE biographer), *Life of the Emperor Nero*

Although the ownership of real property remained the aristocratic standard of wealth until the end of antiquity, as early as the second millennium BCE Greek merchants grew prosperous by trading with the various peoples who lived on the shores of the Mediterranean, while Greek adventurers who hired themselves out as mercenaries brought back some of the remarkable wares of Egypt and the East. Some historians have suggested that the Trojan War, far from being a battle over the beautiful Helen, was actually a struggle over competing economic spheres of influence. The high finances of bonds, stock options, and mergers and acquisitions may have been unknown to the Greeks and the Romans, but lucrative trade, commerce, and speculative investment flourished in the classical world.

Because the land was poor, and perhaps because life at home was sometimes dangerous and sometimes dull, the Greeks often left home to seek their fortunes. Perhaps the most famous Greek adventurer was the mythical hero Odysseus, but others sought an easier and, perhaps, more profitable life in Asia Minor, the home not only of the legendary king Midas<sup>2</sup> but also of Croesus, the sixth-century BCE Lydian king who is credited with having “invented” money.<sup>3</sup>

The conquests of Alexander the Great in the fourth century BCE extended the Greek view as far as India, and where Greek armies went, traders and merchants soon followed. Although Alexander’s empire did not outlast his lifetime, contact between East and West continued in the Roman period. The profits generated by the sale of agricultural products such as grain and olive oil as well as the demand for expensive luxury goods allowed at least a few Romans to accumulate a great deal of money. The government held monopolies on some industries, but by and large, business was a matter of *caveat emptor*.<sup>4</sup>

Those few Romans who could afford it (and some who could not) often indulged in conspicuous consumption and an opulent lifestyle. Consumer debt and fraud were probably invented by the Romans, and by late antiquity, inflation was rampant and prices sky-high. Moneylenders charged extremely high rates of interest to those who were insolvent and on the edge of bankruptcy. A coherent fiscal policy, including a budget, seems to have been nonexistent throughout most of Roman history. In order to meet its obligations (and the indulgences of its emperors), the state raised money through a variety of means, including expropriation of property, conquest, and, of course, taxation. The eventual collapse of the Roman economy is a depressingly all-too-familiar story.

---

2. Midas, the legendary king of Phrygia in Asia Minor, was cursed by having his wish granted that everything he touched would turn to gold.

3. The Lydians are said to have been the first to issue coins of gold and silver that might be used for the exchange of goods. Croesus was so wealthy that even now the phrase “rich as Croesus” is used to describe someone who is extraordinarily rich.

4. “Let the buyer beware.” It’s still a useful rule to follow.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
copia, copiae	supply, abundance	copious
economia (οἰκονομία)	household management	economical
cf. ecos (οἶκος)	house <sup>5</sup>	
emporion (ἐμποριον)	market	emporium
fiscus, fisci	basket, purse, treasury	fiscal
flo-flare-flatum	blow	deflation
cf. inflo-inflare-inflatum	swell	
fraus, fraudis	deceit	fraudulent
haereo-haerēre-haesum	stick, cling to	adhesion
lucrum, lucre	profit	lucrative
mercior-mercari-mercatum	trade	mercantile
merces, mercedis	pay, wages	mercenary
mergo-mergere-mersum	sink, overwhelm, swallow up	submerge
otium, otii	leisure	otiose
nec + otium > negotium	business	negotiate
pendo-pendere-pensum	hang	pendant
proprium, proprii	one's own, special, fitting, proper	appropriate
rumpo-rumpere-ruptum	break	rupture
solvo-solvere-solutum	loosen, untie	insoluble
taxo-taxare-taxatum	tax	taxation
cf. tango-tangere-tactum	touch	intangible
utor-uti-usum	use	utility
usura-usuria	interest	usury

### ***She's Worth Her Salt***

Roman soldiers were given an allowance to buy salt (*sal, salis*), an important commodity in the ancient world and used primarily as a preservative. The allowance was called a *salarium*. The word was then applied to any payment for work.

### ***Let This Be a Warning to You***

The first mint in Rome was located in the temple of Juno Moneta, so named, the Romans believed, because when the city had been threatened with invasion, the sacred geese of the goddess had warned the Romans of the coming invasion.

*moneo-monēre-monitum* = warn

5. In modern science, the prefix *eco-* indicates “environmentally friendly.” What do you think the connection is between the Greek word *oikos* and modern usage of the prefix *eco-*?



Bound captive.  
Hadrian's Forum, Rome.

The modern English words *money* and *mint* (a place where money is coined by authority of the state) are derived from this verb.

### ***Mary Had a Little Lamb***

In the ancient world, before the “invention” of money, wealth was measured by one’s material possessions, especially flocks of sheep or herds of cattle. The word for a herd or a flock thus became the etymological root of the Latin word for money.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
pecu	flock, herd that which belonged to you was your <i>peculium</i> (private property)
pecunia, pecuniae	money

*In Conclusion, a Word from Our Sponsor*

The ancient economy seems to have managed quite well without the aid of advertising, subliminal or otherwise, although some of the Roman emperors probably could have used some media enhancement and better public-service announcements to improve their image.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
claudio-claudere-clausum in compounds, -cludo, -cludere, -clusum	close	clause occlude, exclusive
spondeo-spondere-sponsum	pledge, promise	respond
limen, liminis	threshold	liminal
nuntio-nuntiare-nuntiatus	announce	denunciation
imago, imaginis	copy, likeness	imagination



## II: EXERCISES

**A. Answer each question or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.**

1. *Empirical* knowledge comes from \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The teacher said I was a *paradigm* of good behavior, a \_\_\_\_\_ to be followed.
3. A *systemic* infection affects the \_\_\_\_\_ of the body.
4. When I was *absolved* of the crime, I was \_\_\_\_\_ any blame.
5. A *significant* event \_\_\_\_\_ on history.
6. When asked to *moderate* her voice, she began to speak in \_\_\_\_\_ tones.
7. She gave me a *schematic* drawing of the machine so that I could see its \_\_\_\_\_.
8. An *impecunious* person has \_\_\_\_\_.
9. What is the connection between a herd of cows and money? \_\_\_\_\_
10. *Tangible* results are \_\_\_\_\_.
11. A *mercenary* individual is interested only in \_\_\_\_\_.
12. What is the literal meaning of *topography*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage?  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Our *tactile* sense is stimulated by \_\_\_\_\_.
14. An *adherent* \_\_\_\_\_ his beliefs.
15. New York City may be called an *emporium* because it is a \_\_\_\_\_ of ideas.
16. In a *conflation* of accounts of an event, the details have been \_\_\_\_\_.
17. What is the difference in meaning between *appropriate* (verb) and *appropriate* (adjective)?  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 18. A *lucrative* business is one that shows a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 19. We now use the word *mediocre* in a pejorative way. What is its literal meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
- 20. What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
- 21. You *defrauded* me of my life savings when you took them \_\_\_\_\_ me by \_\_\_\_\_.
- 22. What is the literal meaning of *despondent*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_  
Can you figure out how it came to take on this usage? \_\_\_\_\_
- 23. When medical science looks for the *etiology* of a disease, it is seeking its \_\_\_\_\_.
- 24. What are two different usages of *cultivate*? \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_
- 25. *Subliminal* advertising influences us by going \_\_\_\_\_ of our consciousness.
- 26. What is the literal meaning of the term *macroeconomics*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
- 27. Where is *Utopia*? \_\_\_\_\_

**B. Everywhere I Turn ...**

What is the literal meaning and current usage of each of the following words?

	<b>Literal Meaning</b>	<b>Current Usage</b>
28. subversion:	_____	_____
29. perverse:	_____	_____
30. reversion:	_____	_____
31. diversionary:	_____	_____
32. converse:	_____	_____
33. aversion:	_____	_____
34. incontrovertible:	_____	_____

**C. Fold in the Following Prefixes . . .**

What is the literal meaning and current usage of each of the following words?

	<b>Literal Meaning</b>	<b>Current Usage</b>
35. replication:	_____	_____
36. supplication:	_____	_____
37. implication:	_____	_____
38. complicated:	_____	_____
39. duplicitous:	_____	_____
40. compliant:	_____	_____
41. explicate:	_____	_____

**D. It All Depends . . .**

What is the literal meaning and current usage of each of the following words?

	<b>Literal Meaning</b>	<b>Current Usage</b>
42. impend:	_____	_____
43. depend:	_____	_____
44. expense:	_____	_____
45. pensive:	_____	_____
46. suspense:	_____	_____
47. compendium:	_____	_____
48. pendulous:	_____	_____



**E. It All Depends on How You Look at It . . .**

What is the literal meaning and current usage of each of the following words?

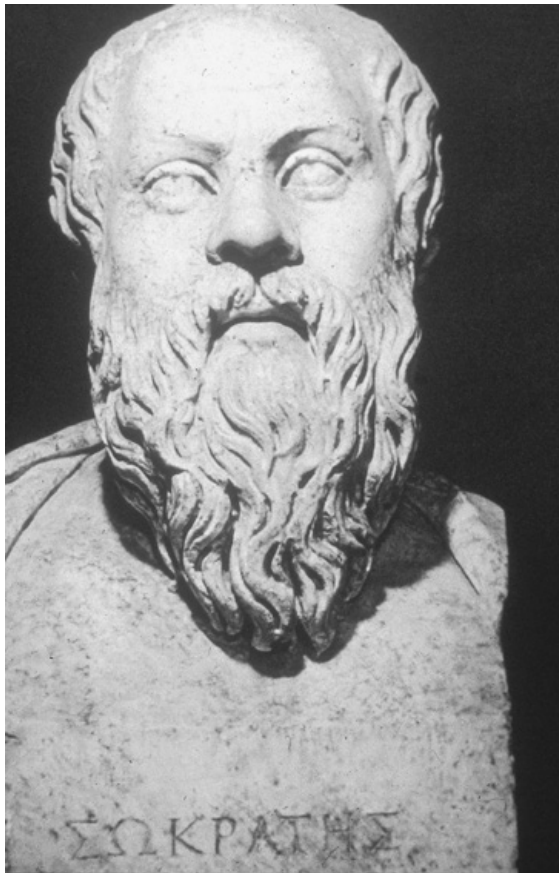
	<b>Literal Meaning</b>	<b>Current Usage</b>
49. introspective:	_____	_____
50. prospective:	_____	_____
51. retrospective:	_____	_____
52. spectacular:	_____	_____
53. perspective:	_____	_____
54. circumspect:	_____	_____
55. perspicacious:	_____	_____

**F. Let Me Count the Change.**

What are the Latin roots of the following currencies?

56. the English pound \_\_\_\_\_
57. the Italian lira \_\_\_\_\_
58. the Spanish peseta \_\_\_\_\_

# SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS



The Greek philosopher Socrates (469–399 BCE).

*“Man is not taught by the gods to know things whole from the outset; little by little advances are made with time and with trouble.”*

—XENOPHANES (sixth-century BCE Greek philosopher)

ANCIENT AND MODERN SCIENCE

“All mankind have an instinctive desire for knowledge.”

—ARISTOTLE (fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher), *Metaphysics*

Most of the vocabulary of modern science and technology is derived from Greek and Latin roots. Many of these terms are, of course, learned borrowings since the ancient world’s concepts of, and postulates about, physical reality were really quite different from those of modern science. Nevertheless, the questions that the ancient Greeks and Romans asked about the nature of the world—how it worked and of what sort of material it was made—determined the course of European scientific inquiry into the modern period. And the recognition that the Greeks and Romans were the primary source of the European intellectual tradition led the modern physical sciences to reach back to their classical roots in order to construct their specialized vocabularies. In addition, and perhaps as importantly, the use of Greek and Latin roots has allowed for the creation of a common scientific language that transcends linguistic barriers.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Meaning of Derivative</i>
techne (τέχνη)	skill, art	_____	_____
ars, artis	skill, art	_____	_____
episteme (ἐπιστήμη)	knowledge	_____	_____
scio-scire-scitum	know	_____	_____
scientia, scientiae	knowledge	_____	_____
materia, materiae	matter, material	_____	_____
nascor-nasci-natum	be born	_____	_____
physis (φύσις)	nature	_____	_____
experior-experiri-expertum	try, test	_____	_____
postulo-postulare-postulatum	demand, require, claim	_____	_____
quale, qualis	of what kind?	_____	_____
quantum, quanti	how much?	_____	_____
quot	how many?	_____	_____

1. Using your unabridged dictionary, find an English derivative and its modern English meaning for each of the Greek or Latin words listed in this section.

## THE BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES

*“Nature does not go by any hard and fast law.”*

—THEOPHRASTUS (fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher and scholar)

*Biology* is the study of life or living matter in all its forms. The system of classification of plants and animals that modern biology employs was devised by Carl van Linne (Linnaeus), an eighteenth-century Swedish scientist who organized the varieties of plants and animals by giving each a double Latin name, the first word denoting the *genus* and the second, the *species*.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>Meaning of Derivative</i>
bios (βίος)	life	_____	_____
symbiosis (συμβίωσις)	living together	_____	_____
vita, vitae	life	_____	_____
genus, generis	birth, origin, offspring	_____	_____
cf. genos (γένος)	type, kind, family,	_____	_____
	race, class	_____	_____
species, speciei	form, shape, appearance	_____	_____
cf. specimen,	model, example	_____	_____
speciminis		_____	_____
phylon (φῦλον)	race, tribe, class	_____	_____

## Zoology

*“The fox knows many things, but the hedgehog knows one big thing.”*

—ARCHILOCHUS (seventh-century BCE Greek poet)

*Zoology* is that branch of biology that studies the behavior, physiology, and classification of animals (including human beings).

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
zoon (ζῶον)	living thing
-zoon (sing.), -zoa (pl.)	suffix used to form the names of zoological groups
animal, animalis	living being
cf. anima, animae	

2. Using your unabridged dictionary, find an English derivative and its modern English meaning for each of the Greek and Latin words listed in this section.

The Latin names of many animals provide many descriptive adjectives in English. Some of these adjectives can be used to characterize the behavior of human beings. Here are just a few examples.

<i>Animal</i>	<i>Latin Name</i>	<i>Derivative English Adjective</i>	<i>Meaning of Adjective When Applied to Human Behavior<sup>3</sup></i>
bear	ursus, ursi	ursine	_____
cat	felis, felis	feline	_____
cow	bos, bovis	bovine	_____
dog	canis, canis	canine	_____
horse	equus, equi	equine	_____
monkey	simia, simiae	simian	_____

Ornithology

“There is nothing better or more pleasant than to sprout wings.”  
—ARISTOPHANES (fifth-century BCE Greek comic playwright), *The Birds*

*Ornithology* is that branch of zoology that deals with the scientific study of birds, including their classification and habits, habitats and ecology, and evolution. Charles Darwin based much his early understanding of evolutionary theory on the study of birds, and today most ornithologists believe that birds evolved from dinosaurs.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ornis, ornithos (ὄρνις)	bird
avis, avis	bird
pteron (πτερόν)	wing
ptero- (combining prefix)	winged

I can fly! What was a *pterodactyl* and why was it so named?

Entomology

“Some have said that bees partake of the divine mind and heavenly breath.”  
—VIRGIL (first-century BCE Roman poet), *Georgics*

*Entomology* is that branch of zoology that deals with the scientific study of insects. Entomologists estimate that there are at least 1 million species of insects. Although

3. Not all the derivatives can be applied to human behavior.

the classification of insects uses Latin- and Greek-based names, the common names of insects are very often locally given. For example, *lepidoptera* is an order of insects, but one of the insects that belong in this order is called *butterfly* in English, *papillon* in French, and *la mariposa* in Spanish.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
entomon (ἔντομον)	notched, cut into pieces
cf. tomos (τομός)	cutting
insectum, insecti	notched, cut into pieces
cf. seco–secare–sectum	cut
formica, formicae	ant
apis, apis	bee



**You failed your Latin exam!**  
**But Sweetie, it's important to learn Latin:**  
**All your friends' names have Latin roots...**

Sweetie. [www.cartoonstock.com](http://www.cartoonstock.com).

Ichthyology

*“I shall be more silent than the fish.”*

—LUCIAN (second-century CE Greek essayist)

*Ichthyology* is that branch of zoology that deals with the study of fish.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ichthys (ἰχθύς)	fish
piscis, piscis	fish
mare, maris	sea
Oceanos (Ὠκεανός)	Greek god who ruled the waters that flowed around the earth

*Metaphors*

The symbol of early Christianity was a fish. This sign was chosen because the Greek word *ichthys* was interpreted as an acronym for the following words: Ἰησοῦς Χριστός Θεοῦ Υἱὸς Σωτὴρ (*Iesūs Christos Theou Uios Soter* = Jesus Christ, the Son of God, Savior).

Herpetology

*Nearby are their three winged sisters,  
the snake-haired Gorgons, hateful to men.  
No mortal having seen them will still live.*

—AESCHYLUS (fifth-century BCE Greek playwright), *Prometheus Bound*

*Herpetology* is that branch of zoology that deals with the study of reptiles and amphibians.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
herpo (ἑρπω)	creep, crawl	_____
serpo-serpere-serptum	creep, crawl	_____
cf. serpens, serpentis	creeping, crawling	_____
reptile, reptilis	creeping, crawling	_____
dracon (δράκων)	large serpent, dragon	_____
sauros (σαῦρος)	lizard	_____

I'd avoid seeing the movie *Jurassic Park* if I were you. As the scientists in the movie discovered, cloning dinosaurs, especially one of the largest of them all, *Tyrannosaurus Rex* (or T. Rex as his friends called him) is not a great idea. A carnivore, he was forty-five feet long with teeth that were a foot in length.

dinon (δεινόν) = fearsome, terrible

Botany

*In turn the lord who strikes from afar, Apollo, answered him:  
Shaker of the earth, you would have me be as one without prudence  
if I am to fight even you for the sake of insignificant  
mortals, who are as leaves, and now flourish and grow warm  
with life, and feed on what the ground gives, but then  
fade away and are dead.  
—HOMER, The Iliad*

*Botany* is that branch of biology that deals with the scientific study of plants, including their structure, genetics, ecology, and classification.

Greek or Latin Word	English Meaning	English Derivative
botane (βοτάνη)	grass, herb	_____
dendron (δενδρόν)	tree	_____
arbor, arboris	tree	_____
anthos (ἄνθος)	flower, blossom	_____
flos, floris	flower	_____
cf. floreo–florēre	flourish	_____
herba, herbae	grass	_____
folium, folii	leaf	_____
radix, radicis	root	_____

**Resting On Her Laurels**

The Greeks believed that certain places were inhabited by female spirits of nature, called *nymphs*. Those who lived within trees were called *dryads*. There are many myths about nymphs, whose number were legion, but perhaps the most famous is that of Daphne, who was turned into a laurel tree in order to prevent her capture by the god Apollo, who was pursuing her. The laurel was forever after sacred to Apollo as a symbol of his desire to capture Daphne.

daphne (δάφνη) = the laurel tree



Genetics

*“But she bore Chimaera, who breathed invincible fire, a terrible great creature, swift-footed and strong. She had three heads: one of a fierce lion, one of a she-goat, and one of a powerful serpent.”*

—HESIOD (seventh-century BCE Greek poet), *Theogony*

*Genetics* is that branch of biology that deals with heredity: the transmission of characteristics encoded in the chromosomes of cells from parent to offspring. Classical mythology records many examples of strange genetic hybrids and mutations. The Cretan queen Pasiphae gave birth to the Minotaur, a creature with the head of a bull and the body of a man; the Centaurs, who were half horse and half human, were the product of the mortal Ixion and a cloud; and Zeus changed himself and the mortal Leda into swans so they might escape the jealous eye of Hera, his wife. Leda subsequently laid an egg, out of which hatched four children.

Modern genetics began much more modestly with the work of Gregor Mendel (1822–1884), an Austrian monk, whose plant-breeding experiments led him to formulate the first principles of heredity. Although his laws have been demonstrated to be not universally true, Mendel’s theories on dominant and recessive traits are the basis for some of today’s high-tech genetic engineering. The discovery of the existence of DNA and the development of the techniques of gene manipulation have opened up many possibilities, some perhaps as strange as those described in ancient myth.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
dominor–dominari–dominatum	rule	_____
genea (γενεά)	family, race	_____
heres, heredis	heir	_____
hybrida, hybridae	mixed breed	_____
muto–mutare–mutatum	change	_____
typos (τύπος)	mark, image, model, outline	_____

***He Looks Just Like You . . .***

Although the Greeks envisioned hybrid creatures that combined the characteristics of humans and other animals, modern biology has explored the possibility of creating exact genetic replicas through the process of cloning.

Greek Word

clon (κλών)

English Meaning

offshoot, twig

***What Are You Made Of?***

The molecular form of DNA (*deoxyribonucleic acid*) present in chromosomes and the carrier of genetic information has been described as two spirals wound around each other. Check your English dictionary to see how *chromosome* got its name. Can you see which Greek words are its roots?

Greek Word

helix (ἥλιξ)

English Meaning

spiral

**ASTRONOMY**

*“A clever and attractive Thracian servant-girl is said to have mocked Thales (a sixth-century BCE Greek philosopher) for falling into a well while he was observing the stars and looking upward.”*

—PLATO, *Theatetus* (174A)

One branch of science, *astronomy*, does have its foundation in antiquity, since the heavenly bodies were studied with great interest by all the cultures of the ancient world. Many of the terms used by modern astronomers were employed first by the Greeks and Romans, although often within a different context. For example, when the modern astronomer uses the word *planet*, she means any heavenly body that shines by reflected light and revolves around a sun. But the ancient Greek definition of a planet was any one of the heavenly spheres that had apparent motion. These, then, included the sun and the moon, as well as Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn—but not the Earth, which many ancient astronomers believed stood still, unchanging, while the other planets revolved around it in concentric circles.

Some of the terminology of modern astronomy has its origins in Greek mythology. We call the system of stars to which our sun belongs the Milky Way because, traditionally, the Greeks told the story that it had been formed from drops of milk spilled from the breast of the goddess Hera as she nursed the infant hero Heracles. Hence, too, the word *galaxy*. In addition, many of the constellations are named for figures that appear in Greek and Roman myth.

In the ancient world, scientific astronomy and astrology coexisted quite happily. As we have already seen, many believed (then as now) in astrology, which maintained that the present and future could be revealed through the study of the activity of the planets and the constellations. According to traditional astrological theory, the relationship between the planets and the constellations, or the signs of the Zodiac, exerts a special influence over human affairs. Although many ancient Greek philosophers and scientists rejected the premises of astrology, they did believe that the universe was perfect and unchanging, the visible symbol of a divine order; hence, they called it the *cosmos*. More popularly, the Greeks believed that the earth arose out of a great void, or emptiness, which they called *Chaos*.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
caelum, caeli	sky, heaven	_____
aster (ἄστήρ) or astron (ἄστρον)	star	_____
astrum, astri	star	_____
stella, stellae	star	_____
planetes (πλανήτης)	wandering, planet	_____
helios (ἥλιος)	sun	_____
sol, solis	sun	_____
luna, lunae	moon	_____
gala, galactos (γάλα)	milk	_____
volvo-volvere-volutum	turn	_____
cosmos (κόσμος)	order, decoration, universe	_____
mundus, mundi	decoration, world, universe	_____
chaos (χάος)	chaos, infinite space	_____

Most ancient astronomers held to the view that all the planets revolved around the earth and that there was a belt in the heavens, called the Zodiac, that encompassed the apparent paths of the planets. This belt or band was divided into twelve equal parts, called signs, each having the name of a constellation.

**Signs of the Zodiac (Latin Names)**

Can you find any English words that are derivatives of the Latin names of the Zodiacal signs?

<i>Sign</i>		<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Sign</i>		<i>English Meaning</i>
Aries	=	Ram	Libra	=	Scales
Taurus	=	Bull	Scorpio	=	Scorpion
Gemini	=	Twins	Sagittarius	=	Archer

Cancer	=	Crab	Capricorn	=	Goat-Horned
Leo	=	Lion	Aquarius	=	Water Carrier
Virgo	=	Maiden	Pisces	=	Fish

### ***Cosmic Glue***

Ancient philosophers believed that the heavenly bodies were composed of a fifth element and that this substance, which Aristotle called *ether*, was hidden in all matter. In Latin medieval philosophical treatises this fifth element was called the *quinta essentia*. What is the current meaning of the word *quintessence*?

ether (αἰθήρ)

heaven, sky

sum-esse-futurum

be, exist

### ***You'd Better Stay Home***

The English words *disaster*, *dismal*, and *influenza* all have their roots in the belief that the heavenly bodies have the power to affect our lives.

*disaster* = *dis-* (apart, away from) + *aster*

*dismal*: The Romans believed that certain days (*dies*) were unlucky (*mali*) because of the influence of the stars.

*influenza*: The disease was thought to be caused by the effect of the heavenly bodies on human beings. The Italian word *influenza* is derived from the Latin verb *influo-influere* = flow into.

### ***Look! Up in the Sky! It's a Bird . . .***

The names of most of the planets in our solar system bear the names of the divinities who the Romans believed ruled over them. Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn had been observed by ancient astronomers, but it was not until the late eighteenth century that another celestial body, previously thought to be a comet, was recognized as a planet. After much argument among astronomers (and politicians), it was named Uranus, after the ancient Greek god of the sky. In the mid-nineteenth century, the naming of the planet Neptune was also a question of politics and national rivalry. The French discoverer of the planet wanted it to be named after himself, but everyone eventually agreed to call it Neptune after the Roman god of the sea.



Sarcophagus of a child. Kayseri Museum, Turkey.

## CHEMISTRY

*“Nature delights in nature, and nature conquers nature, and nature masters nature.”*

—BOLUS OF MENDES (third-century BCE Greek scientist), *Physica*

The words *chemistry* and *alchemy* have the same etymological root but the aim of either pursuit is very different. The alchemist sought to transform base metals (e.g., lead, iron) into gold, although some have seen the practice merely as a metaphor for the practitioner transforming himself from a base being into one who was spiritually purified. The goal of at least some alchemical practitioners was to discover the philosopher’s stone or the *elixir*<sup>4</sup> *vitae*, a substance that was thought capable of effecting this transformation. Although many chemical compounds were discovered and many laboratory instruments that are still used were invented in this search, the modern science of chemistry asserts that it is much more modest in its goals: it is the study of the compositions and properties of substances and the reactions by which they are produced and changed.

---

4. The word *elixir* is an example of a Greek word that passed into Arabic and then back into medieval Latin. Its etymology seems to be the Greek word *xeron* (dry) plus the Arabic article *al*.

## The Elements

Although modern chemistry defines *elements* as basic substances that cannot be broken down into simpler ones by chemical means, the ancient view was that there were four elements that comprised the cosmos: earth, air, fire, and water.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
elementum, elementi	element, first principle	
chemia (χημεία) <sup>5</sup>	alloying of metals	chemo-
ge (γῆ)	earth	geo-
terra, terrae	earth	
aer (ἀήρ)	air	aero-
aer, aeris	air	
aqua, aquae	water	
hydor, hydros (ὕδωρ)	water	hydro-
pyr, pyros (πῦρ)	fire	pyro-
ignis, ignis	fire	

Modern chemistry recognizes over one hundred elements. They exist in the form of solids, liquids, and gases.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
liquidum, liquidum	liquid
cf. liquor-liqui	flow, melt
solidum, solidi	firm, whole, complete
stereon (στερεόν)	solid, firm
vapor, vaporis	gas, vapor

In the periodic table, many elements are represented by abbreviations of their Latin names.

<i>Element</i>	<i>Latin Name</i>	<i>Modern Chemical Symbol</i>
copper	cuprum	Cu
gold	aurum	Au
silver	argentum	Ag
lead	plumbum	Pb
iron	ferrum	Fe

5. The actual meaning of the word *chemia* is a matter of debate. It has been suggested that the word passed through Arabic where it acquired the Arabic article *al*: *al* + *chemia* > *alchemy*.

Other elements have names that are drawn from Greek and Roman mythology.

<i>Element</i>	<i>Character</i>
Helium	named for Helios, the Greek god of the sun
Niobium	named for Niobe, a mortal woman whose many children were killed by Apollo after she boasted of having more children than Leto, Apollo's mother. Overwhelmed by grief, Niobe wept unceasingly and turned to a stone statue that continued to weep.
Promethium	named for Prometheus, a Greek god who stole fire from the gods and gave it to humans
Selenium	named for Selene, Greek goddess of the moon
Tantalum	named for the mortal Tantalus who, thinking he could deceive the gods, served them his son Pelops in a stew. The divinities were not fooled or amused. They put Pelops back together again and condemned Tantalus to eternal punishment in the underworld.
Titanium	named for the Titans, a second generation of gods, who were overthrown by the Olympian gods led by Zeus

### ***Eponyms***

Although many elements take their names from Greek and Latin roots, some elements are *eponyms* that take their names from modern scientific heroes, for example, fermium, einsteinium, curium, and mendelevium. From what Greek word is *eponym* derived, and what does it mean?

## **Biochemistry**

*Sugar Is Sweet, and So Are You . . .*

*Biochemistry* is that branch of chemistry that deals with living matter. The human body has proved to be a highly sophisticated chemistry lab that is constantly breaking down organic compounds (nutrients) so they may be used by the body, which to do so produces various enzymes that act as catalysts in this process. During digestion, for example, carbohydrates are converted into glucose, a sugar.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
lysis (λύσις)	untying, loosening	-lysis
cf. catalysis (κατάλυσις)	dissolving	
zyme (ζύμη)	leaven, yeast	-zyme
fermentum, fermenti	leaven, yeast	
cf. ferveo-fervēre	boil, rage	
glycy (γλυκύ)	sweet	as compound = sugar

### ***Mistaken Identity***

Antoine Lavoisier, the French chemist who in 1775 identified the element necessary for combustion, mistakenly thought that it was present in all acids. Therefore he named it *oxygen* (causing sharpness).

oxy (ὀξύ) = sharp

### ***Please Don't Drink the Water***

In modern chemistry, the term *aqua* means not only water but liquid. Before you fill your glass, you should know the following deadly drinks.

<i>Name</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Chemical Substance</i>
<i>aqua fortis</i>	strong water	nitric acid
<i>aqua regia</i>	royal water	a mixture of hydrochloric and nitric acid that dissolves gold

## **PHYSICS**

*“Panta rhei [All things flow]”*

—HERACLITUS (sixth-century BCE Greek philosopher)

The modern science of *physics* deals with the properties, changes, and interactions of matter and energy, but to the ancient Greeks, physics was the inclusive study of natural science or natural philosophy. Modern physics, on the other hand, includes the fields of mechanics, optics, and thermodynamics.



<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
physis (φύσις)	nature
ergon (ἔργον)	work
opus, operis	work
labor-laborari-laboratum	work (verb)
atomon (ἄτομον)	uncut
nucleus, nuclei	kernel
electron (ἤλεκτρον)	amber
electro- (used as a learned borrowing)	electric
neuter, neutri	neither
proton (πρῶτον)	first
moles, molis <sup>6</sup>	mass
pars, partis	part

### *Mechanics*

*“The path up and path down are one and the same.”*

—HERACLITUS (sixth-century BCE Greek philosopher)

*Mechanics* is that branch of physics that deals with motion and the action of force on bodies. The history of mechanics proves that not all science takes place in the laboratory. According to popular tradition, Galileo investigated the relative speed of falling bodies by dropping differing weights from the top of the Leaning Tower of Pisa, while Isaac Newton is said to have been inspired to formulate his theories about the laws of gravity and motion after watching an apple fall from a tree. And then, of course, there was the third-century BCE Greek scientist Archimedes, who formulated the principle that a body immersed in fluid is buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of the fluid displaced. He is said to have been lying in his bath when he made the discovery and then to have jumped up, naked, and run into the street, shouting, “Eureka!” [εὕρηκα = I have found (it)].

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
moveo-movēre-motum	move
mechane (μηχανή)	machine, contrivance
kinesis (κίνησις)	movement
grave, gravis	heavy
velox, velocis	rapid, swift
inertia, inertiae	lack of skill, laziness
cf. ars, artis	skill

6. What are the English diminutive forms of *moles* and *pars*?

## Optics

*“I seem to see two suns blazing in the heavens.”*

—EURIPIDES (fifth-century BCE Athenian playwright), *The Bacchae*

*Optics* is that branch of physics that deals with the nature and properties of light and vision.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
opteuo (ὀπτεύω)	see
video-vidēre-visum	see
phos, photos (φῶς)	light
lux, lucis	light
lumen, luminis	light, source of light
chroma, chromatosis (χρῶμα)	color
pigmentum, pigmenti	color

And as the Muppet Kermit the Frog sings, “It Isn’t Easy Being Green.”

<i>Color</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Greek Combining Form</i>
white	album, albi	leucon (λευκόν)	leuco-
black	atrum, atrī	melan (μέλαν)	melano-
red	rubrum, rubri	erythron (ἐρυθρόν)	erythro-
blue	caeruleum, caerulei	cynanous (κυανοῦς)	cyano-
green	virides, viridis	chloron (χλωρόν)	chloro-

## Thermodynamics

*Thermodynamics* is that branch of physics that deals with the relationship between heat and energy.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Combining Form</i>
thermon (θερμόν)	hot, warm	thermo-
calor, caloris	heat, warmth	
dynamis (δύναμις)	power, force	dynamo-
potentia, potentiae	power, force	
chronos (χρόνος)	time	chrono-
tempus, temporis	time	

GEOLOGY

“Earth first produced starry Sky, equal in size to herself, to cover her on all sides.”  
—HESIOD (eighth-century BCE Greek poet), *Theogony* l. 126

*Geology* is the study of the structure of the earth’s crust and the formation of its various layers, including rock types and fossils. In ancient Greece, the earth was considered to be the oldest of all the deities. Her name was Gaia, and she had given birth to the first generation of gods and to all good things in nature. We still call our planet Mother Earth.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
Ge (Γῆ) or Gaia (Γαῖα)	earth	geo-
terra, terrae	earth	
lithos (λίθος)	stone	litho-
petros (πέτρος)	stone, rock	petro-
lapis, lapidis	stone	
Vulcanus	Roman blacksmith god who had his forge on Mt. Etna in Sicily. There he made weapons for the gods and heroes. <i>Volcanology</i> is the scientific study of volcanoes.	

***I’ll Drink to That . . .***

Like today, many stones were regarded as precious by the ancient Greeks, but some were thought to have special properties. The amethyst, for example, was believed to prevent intoxication.

methy (μέθυ) = wine. What does the initial alpha (α) in the word *amethyst* represent?

PALEONTOLOGY

*Paleontology* is that branch of geology that deals with prehistoric life through the study of plants and animal fossils (the remains or traces of animal or plant life of earlier geological ages). For the non-specialist, perhaps the most exciting fossils are those of the dinosaurs, the reptiles that lived during the Mesozoic period (220–65 million years ago). They, too, have classical names:

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
paleon (παλαιόν)	old
in English combining form, paleo-	
on,ontos (ὄν)	being
in English combining form, onto-	
fodio-fodere-fossum	dig up
dinon (δεινόν)	terrible, fearsome
sauros (σαῦρος)	lizard

***Jurassic Park, Revisited . . .***

Perhaps the most frightening of the dinosaurs was the 45-foot-long Tyrannosaurus Rex, a carnivore that had teeth that were a foot in length. What are the Greek and Latin roots of his name? His playmates included the brontosaurus and the pterodactyl. What were their special characteristics?

*Jurassic*, by the way, is just a synonym for *Mesozoic*, an age in the earth’s history that occurred between 70 and 220 million years ago. What is the etymology of *Mesozoic*?

dinon (δεινόν) = terrible, fearsome

GEOGRAPHY

*“But as to the fable that there are Antipodes, that is to say, men on the opposite side of the earth, where the sun rises when it sets to us, men who walk with their feet opposite ours, that is in no way credible.”*

—ST. AUGUSTINE, *City of God*

*Geography* is the study of the physical and human landscapes of the surface of the earth, the location and distribution of the earth’s natural and cultural features, the processes that affect them over time and space, and the relationship and interaction between humans and their environment.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Greek Combining Form</i>
mappa, mappae	napkin, cloth, map	
charta, chartae	papyrus, paper	
oros, oreos (ὄρος, ὄρεος)	mountain	oreo-
mons, montis	mountain	
limne (λίμνη)	lake, pool, marsh	limno-
lacus, lacūs	lake	
potamos (ποταμός)	river	
flumen, fluminis	river	
cf. fluo-fluere	flow	
insula, insulae	island	
silva, silvae	forest	



Gerhard Mercator, sixteenth-century Flemish cartographer who created a world map and is said to have coined the word *atlas* to describe a collection of maps. According to Greek mythology, Atlas was the deity who unwillingly held the world on his shoulders. Superstock.

## METEOROLOGY

*“Let the forked curl of fire be hurled against me, let the air be stirred by thunder /  
And the convulsive blast of the savage winds.”*

—AESCHYLUS (fifth-century BCE Athenian playwright), *Prometheus Bound* (1043–45)

*Meteorology* is the science that deals with the study of the atmosphere and atmospheric phenomena, including weather and climate.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
meteoron (μετέωρον)	raised from the ground, high in the air	_____
clima, climatos (κλίμα)	region, zone	_____
atmos (ἄτμος)	air	_____
sphera (σφαῖρα)	ball	_____
nebulae, nebulae	mist, vapor, fog	_____
tempestas, tempestatis	season of the year, weather, storm	_____
pluvia, pluviae	rain	_____
glacies, glaciei	ice	_____
baros (βάρος)	weight	_____

### *It Was a Dark and Stormy Night . . .*

Zeus, of course, was the god who sent thunder and lightning bolts. They were the weapons he used to show his displeasure and to punish those who had angered him. The Greeks believed that the winds were the children of Eos (Dawn) and Astraeus (“the Starry One”), a Titan.

*“Astraeus and Dawn—god and goddess—lay together in love and Dawn gave birth to the violent winds; Zephyr, who brings fair weather; Boreas, who opens a path for the storm; and Notus. After the winds, Dawn gave birth to the stars—the morning star and the shining constellations.”*

—HESIOD (eighth-century BCE Greek poet), *Theogony*

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
anemos (ἄνεμος)	wind
ventus, venti	wind
Aurora, Aurorae	goddess of the dawn

*The Winds*

<i>Greek or Latin Name</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
Boreas (Βορέας)	North Wind
Zephyros (Ζέφυρος)	West Wind
Notos (Νότος)	South Wind
Auster, Austri	South Wind
Euros (Εὐρος)	East Wind
Typhon (Τυφῶν)	a dreadful mythological giant with one hundred fiery serpent heads. His body, after he was killed by Zeus, became the source of all harmful winds.

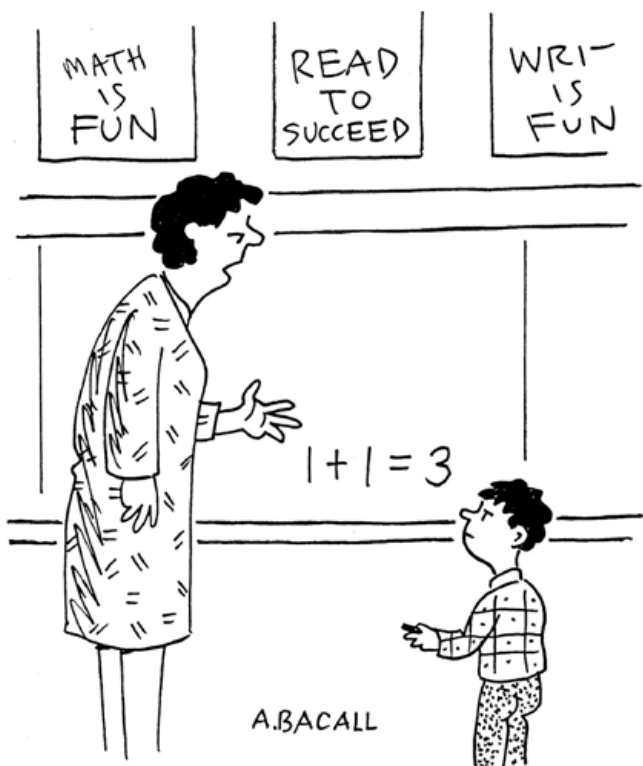
*The Seasons*

In Greek mythology the seasons, or *Horae*, were thought to be the daughters of Zeus and the goddess Themis. It is their Latin names that give us our English derivatives.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
aestas, aestatis	summer
autumnus, autumni	fall
tempus hibernum	winter
tempus vernum	spring

**MATHEMATICS**

To ancient Greek scientists, mathematics was considered a branch of philosophy because they believed that through mathematics one could come to understand all the physical and spiritual relationships among the constituent parts of the cosmos. Modern mathematics has a perhaps more limited goal: it is that branch of knowledge that deals with quantities, magnitudes, and the measurements and relationships of forms.



**"Take my word for it. The answer is two. I'm a college graduate."**

"1 + 1 = 3." [www.cartoonstock.com](http://www.cartoonstock.com).

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
manthano (μανθάνω)	learn
mathematica (μαθηματικά)	the things that have been learned, mathematics
arithmos (ἀριθμός)	number
numerus, numeri	number
calculus, calculi	pebble, small stone <sup>7</sup>
gonia (γωνία)	angle
cf. genu, genū	knee
axioma (ἀξίωμα)	honor, decision, a self-evident theorem (in mathematics)
QED ( <i>quod erat demonstrandum</i> )	that which was to be proved

7. Small stones were often used by the Romans to *calculate* amounts and quantities such as of money, votes, and so forth.



*Circular Reasoning*

The mathematical term *pi*, which represents the ratio of the diameter of a circle to its circumference, was a symbol used by Greek mathematicians to represent the word περιφέρεια, or circumference. Can you figure out the literal meaning of this Greek word?

**Cybernetics**

In 1948, the noted mathematician Norbert Wiener coined the term *cybernetics* to describe the study of systems of control and communication within and between humans, machines, organizations, and society. Although cybernetics encompasses fields of research as diverse as the study of neural networks and chaos theory, it is most popularly associated with the development of computer technology and artificial intelligence.

The use of digital computers has introduced a host of new words to the English language such as *megabyte*, *gigabyte*, *nanotechnology*, and *pixel*, as well as acronyms such as RAM, and has given new meanings to old words such as *memory*, *virtual reality*,<sup>8</sup> *digital*, and *flexibility*, which are formed from Greek and Latin roots.

Computers may affect every aspect of modern existence, but like all machines, they have their limitations. Wouldn't it be nice if, whenever we made an error in our lives, all we had to do were to hit the Delete or Backspace key and erase our mistakes?

<u>Greek or Latin Word</u>	<u>English Meaning</u>
cybernetes (κυβερνήτης)	governor, pilot
puto-putare-putatum	think
computo-computare-computatum	sum up, calculate
nanos (νάνος)	a dwarf. <i>Nanotechnology</i> is the manipulation of individual atoms and molecules.
gigas, gigantos (γίγας)	mighty <sup>9</sup>
mega (μεγά)	very large <sup>10</sup>
byte (the etymology of this word is a matter of great debate)	
digitus, digiti	a finger, a finger's width <sup>11</sup>
pixel	a single point in a graphic image
deleo-delēre-deletum	destroy
erro-errare-erratum	wander, make a mistake

8. In computer terminology, *virtual* is used to describe something not physically present as such but made by software to appear to be so from the point of view of a program or user.

9. In modern scientific terminology, *giga* = billion.

10. In modern scientific terminology, *mega* = million.

11. Can you discover how *digital* became part of the language of *computerese*? What is *digital's* current meaning?

***It's Just Fun and Games . . .***

Although the roots of many words in the language of “computerese” are derived from Greek and Latin, there are borrowings from other languages as well.

If, for example, you like to play video games, you may have created an *avatar* to represent you, the online user, in any way you like. An avatar is a personalized graphical illustration that represents a computer user as an alter ego.<sup>12</sup> The word is derived from the Hindu religion, in which an avatar is the embodiment of a deity who has descended from heaven in human form.

*avatar* (Sanskrit) = divine descent

*What You See Is What You Get.*

And if you have difficulty expressing happiness, sadness, surprise, or whatever else you might be feeling when texting a message, an *emoji* might do it for you.

*emoji* (Japanese) = *e* (picture) + *moji* (letter, character)

**ISLAMIC SCIENCE**

The spread of Islam through North Africa, the Middle East, and Asia brought the medieval Muslim world in contact with the intellectual traditions not only of Greece and Rome but of ancient Mesopotamia, Persia, and India as well. Muslim scholars were very much interested in ancient Greek science and played a decisive role in preserving much of that knowledge, which otherwise would have been lost, through the translation of Greek scientific texts into Arabic. When they found a word that had no Arabic equivalent, they transliterated it and placed the Arabic definite article *al-* in front. Hence, *alchemy*, as we have already seen, is a hybrid word: the article is Arabic, but the base of the word is Greek.

These scholars also did much original research, especially in the fields of astronomy and mathematics. Perhaps the greatest mathematician of the medieval period was the ninth-century Persian al-Khwarazmi whose treatise on linear and quadratic equations, *The Compendium on Calculation by Completion and Balancing*, laid the cornerstone of that branch of mathematics called *algebra* (*al-jabr* = completion). In this work, al-Khwarazmi employed a Hindu system of number notation that we now call *Arabic numerals*. Translated into Latin in the twelfth century, the *Compendium* introduced into Europe the notational system that is now universally used.

Al-Khwarazmi inadvertently gave his name to another mathematical term: *algorithm*, a set of ordered steps for solving a problem, is a corrupted form of *al-Khwarazmi*.

---

12. So says the *Tech Terms Computer Dictionary*, which adds the comment “Of course what’s the point of having a ‘second life’ if it’s the same as reality?”





## 12: EXERCISES

**A. Answer the question or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.**

### Introduction

1. A *microbe* is a \_\_\_\_\_ form of \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I want to study *epistemology* because then I will know how I \_\_\_\_\_ anything.
3. What is the literal meaning of *technocracy*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What is the literal meaning of *artifice*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
5. A *qualifying* exam determines \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge you possess.
6. An *omniscient* being \_\_\_\_\_.
7. What is the literal meaning of *expostulate*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. *Innate* characteristics are those that are \_\_\_\_\_ an individual.
9. In arithmetic, the *quotient* represents \_\_\_\_\_ times one quantity can be divided by another.
10. What is the literal meaning of *specious*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is a *specious* argument?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Biological Sciences

#### A. Botany

11. An *arboretum* is a place where \_\_\_\_\_ are cultivated.
12. A *portfolio* contains \_\_\_\_\_ that can be \_\_\_\_\_.
13. *Dendrochronology* is the science of arranging events in \_\_\_\_\_ by the comparative study of annual growth rings in \_\_\_\_\_.

14. The *philodendron* plant is so named because it \_\_\_\_\_ to wrap itself around \_\_\_\_\_.
15. If I describe his complexion as *florid*, what do I mean? \_\_\_\_\_ If I describe her prose as *florid*, what do I mean? \_\_\_\_\_
16. When a disease has been *eradicated*, it has been taken \_\_\_\_\_ by the \_\_\_\_\_.
17. He wanted to admire the stillness of the *sylvan* setting, but he was afraid to go into the \_\_\_\_\_.

## B. Zoology

18. A person with a *bovine* appearance resembles a \_\_\_\_\_.
19. What animal races in a *hippodrome*? \_\_\_\_\_
20. The *pithecanthropus* displayed characteristics of both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
21. The chief characteristic of *reptiles* is that they \_\_\_\_\_.
22. *Formicide* is a substance that is used to \_\_\_\_\_.
23. A person who engages in the *piscatorial* art enjoys \_\_\_\_\_.
24. *Protozoa* are considered the \_\_\_\_\_ forms of \_\_\_\_\_.
25. What does it mean when we call someone a *rara avis*? \_\_\_\_\_
26. The *hippopotamus* got his name because it resembled a \_\_\_\_\_ that lives in a \_\_\_\_\_.
27. What is the literal meaning of *pterodactyl*? \_\_\_\_\_ How did it get its name?  
\_\_\_\_\_
28. His *feline* grace as he danced made him resemble a \_\_\_\_\_.
29. *Marine biology* is \_\_\_\_\_ that exists in the \_\_\_\_\_.
30. What is the difference between *etymology* and *entomology*? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
31. What is a *toreador*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is the Latin root of this word? \_\_\_\_\_
32. If I say that the situation is *mutable*, I mean that it is subject to \_\_\_\_\_.
33. How did the word *genial* come to mean cheerful and pleasant? \_\_\_\_\_

34. When we call someone a *genius*, we mean he is very smart. How did the word come to have this present meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
35. To *dissect* a problem is to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.

### Astronomy

36. An event of *cosmic* significance affects the \_\_\_\_\_.
37. *Heliotropic* plants turn toward the \_\_\_\_\_.
38. During a *lunar* eclipse, the light of the \_\_\_\_\_ is obscured.
39. What is the difference between *cosmology* and *cosmetology*? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
40. What is the literal meaning of *cosmopolitan*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
41. A *solarium* is a \_\_\_\_\_ we can enjoy the \_\_\_\_\_.
42. His *stellar* performance made him shine like a \_\_\_\_\_.
43. The *planets* seem to \_\_\_\_\_ through the heavens.
44. An *asteroid* is a heavenly body that \_\_\_\_\_.
45. *Lactose* is a \_\_\_\_\_ found in \_\_\_\_\_.
46. She told me, "I get up in the morning, I make my bed, I get on the subway and go to work. I hate my *mundane* existence." What was she complaining about? \_\_\_\_\_
47. He told me that the price of his new car was astronomical. What did he mean?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Chemistry

48. The chief component of *ferric* oxide is \_\_\_\_\_.
49. What is the literal meaning of *stereotype*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage?  
\_\_\_\_\_
50. *Saccharine* is an artificial \_\_\_\_\_. If an individual is described as having a *saccharine* personality, what is she like? \_\_\_\_\_

51. An *aquifer* is a geologic formation that \_\_\_\_\_.
52. As I got off the airplane, I said, "Am I glad to be on *terra firma*!" Where was I?  
\_\_\_\_\_
53. Ian Fleming, the author of the James Bond novel *Goldfinger*, must have studied Latin as a boy since he gave this arch-villain the first name *Auric*. What was the joke? \_\_\_\_\_
54. If you are suffering from *hyperglycemia*, you have \_\_\_\_\_ amount of \_\_\_\_\_ in your \_\_\_\_\_.
55. A *pyrogenic* substance is one that \_\_\_\_\_.
56. What is the meaning of the verb *tantalize*? \_\_\_\_\_. Why is the word based on the myth of Tantalus? \_\_\_\_\_ If you do not know why, check a reference work on classical mythology.

### Physics

57. When she said that the *synergy* of apple pie and ice cream was extraordinary, what did she mean? \_\_\_\_\_
58. *Thermal* underwear helps you keep \_\_\_\_\_.
59. The French word for money is *argent*. What should money be made of? \_\_\_\_\_
60. *Chlorophyll* makes the \_\_\_\_\_ of a plant \_\_\_\_\_.
61. To what other Latin word is the Latin word *materia* related? \_\_\_\_\_ How might the two words be connected? \_\_\_\_\_
62. The earliest Greek philosophers were called the *physicists* because they explored questions about \_\_\_\_\_.
63. A *hydraulic* pump is operated by \_\_\_\_\_.
64. A *dyne* is a measurement of \_\_\_\_\_.
65. A *calorie* is a measurement of \_\_\_\_\_.
66. His *hyperkinetic* activity made me crazy; he was constantly \_\_\_\_\_.
67. What is a *leukocyte*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is an *erythrocyte*? \_\_\_\_\_
68. Be careful that your car's *ignition* does not cause a \_\_\_\_\_.

69. According to its root, *fervor* should mean \_\_\_\_\_. What is its current usage?  
\_\_\_\_\_
70. *Albumen* is the \_\_\_\_\_ of an egg.
71. What color should a *rubric* be? \_\_\_\_\_ What was the original meaning of the word?  
\_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
72. A *monochromatic* picture is done in a \_\_\_\_\_.
73. If the doctor says you are *cyanotic*, you have turned \_\_\_\_\_.
74. An object that is *translucent* allows \_\_\_\_\_ to pass \_\_\_\_\_ it.
75. He was *neutral* in their argument because he supported \_\_\_\_\_ point of view.
76. A *luminary* is a leading \_\_\_\_\_ in his profession.
77. Construct two sentences, each of which illustrates the possible different usages of the word *gravity*. Make sure that the sentences are grammatically correct.
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
78. I had hoped my novel would be my *magnum opus*, but all the reviewers said it was not a  
\_\_\_\_\_.
79. What is the literal meaning of *extempore*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage?  
\_\_\_\_\_
80. What are two different usages of *nucleus*?
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
81. *Velocity* is the measure of the \_\_\_\_\_ of an object.

### Geology and Geography

82. The *geocentric* theory posited that the \_\_\_\_\_ was at the center of the cosmos.
83. I am a *limnologist*, and so I am always jumping into \_\_\_\_\_.



84. If the doctor tells you that you are suffering from *calculi* in your kidneys, what's the matter with you? \_\_\_\_\_
85. When the student called her teacher a *fossil*, what did she mean? \_\_\_\_\_
86. Medieval *cartographers* often attempted to construct a *mappa mundi*. What was their profession? \_\_\_\_\_ What were they trying to create? \_\_\_\_\_
87. What is the literal meaning of *monolith*? What are two different current usages of this word?
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
88. If you are *petrified*, you feel as if you have been \_\_\_\_\_ into \_\_\_\_\_. What are two different current usages of this word?
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
89. The *Paleolithic* period is more commonly known as the \_\_\_\_\_ Age.
90. What is the literal meaning of *megalith*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_
91. What is the literal meaning of *lapidary*? \_\_\_\_\_ What do we mean if we say that someone writes in a *lapidary* style? \_\_\_\_\_

## Meteorology

92. If I said it was a *pluvius* day, what would the weather be? \_\_\_\_\_
93. What is a more common name for the *Aurora Borealis*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is the literal meaning of its name? \_\_\_\_\_
94. His behavior might be described as *tempestuous* because he was always \_\_\_\_\_.
95. The more common name for an *anemone* is a \_\_\_\_\_ flower.
96. Some animals *hibernate* in the \_\_\_\_\_.
97. When he asked me where we would *estivate*, I told him our \_\_\_\_\_ plans.

98. What continent was named the “*southern* unknown land” by nineteenth-century explorers?

\_\_\_\_\_

99. An object that is *spherical* is shaped like a \_\_\_\_\_.

100. An idea that is *nebulous* is so vague that it resembles a \_\_\_\_\_.

101. If your teacher gives you a *glacial* look, he is acting in an \_\_\_\_\_ manner.

### Mathematics

102. At the end of his logical argument, he stated confidently, “*QED*.” What did he mean? \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

103. A *megaton* bomb carries an explosive force equal to \_\_\_\_\_ tons of TNT.

104. It is *axiomatic* that night follows day, i.e., it is a \_\_\_\_\_.

105. Your *reputation* reveals what others \_\_\_\_\_ about you.

106. What is the literal meaning of *virtual*? \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ What is its current usage? \_\_\_\_\_

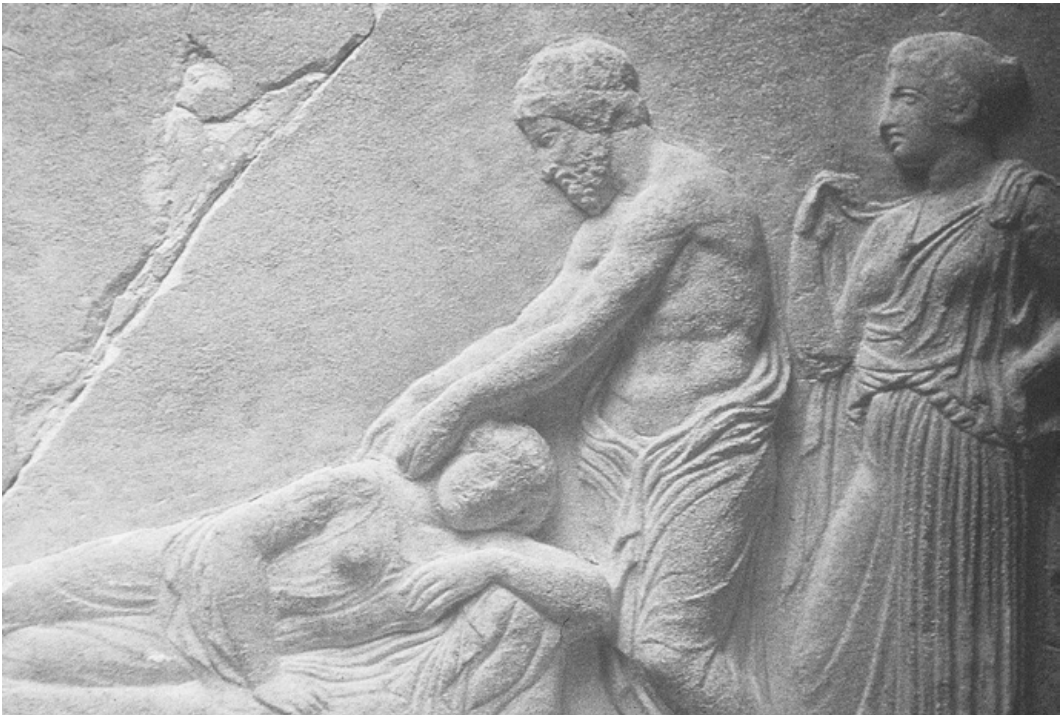
107. The *deleterious* effects of drugs can \_\_\_\_\_ you.

108. In editing a text, what is the meaning of *dele*? \_\_\_\_\_

109. His *erratic* behavior caused everyone to fear that his mind was \_\_\_\_\_



# HUMAN BIOLOGY AND MEDICINE



Asclepius, the Greek god of healing and patron deity of physicians. *National Museum, Athens.*

*“Life is short, science is long; opportunity is elusive, experiment is dangerous, judgment is difficult. It is not enough for the physician to do what is necessary, but the patient and the attendants must do their part as well, and circumstances must be favorable.”*

—HIPPOCRATIC CORPUS, *Aphorisms* I.1

MODERN MEDICINE AND  
ANCIENT TERMINOLOGY

Perhaps no other area that affects our lives demonstrates so clearly the influence of Greek and Latin on English vocabulary as does the field of medicine. Although the causes of diseases have been identified and new technologies to treat them are devised every day, medicine has created for itself an inexhaustible source for an expanding terminology by continually drawing upon Greek and Latin roots.<sup>1</sup>

THE HUMAN BODY

*“It is not possible to look at the constituent parts of human beings, such as blood, flesh, bones, blood-vessels and the like without considerable distaste.”*

—ARISTOTLE, *On the Parts of Animals*

The biological and medical sciences have thoroughly investigated the functions and operations of every part of the human body. They have taught us that the body is a wonderful machine that is extraordinarily efficient (most of the time). It is composed of over 200 bones, 700 muscles, and approximately 5 quarts of blood and is covered by about 25 square feet of skin. In addition, it possesses a remarkably intricate nervous system as well as a multitude of organs that carry on vital functions within the machine.

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Greek Combining Form</i>
life	vita, vitae	bios (βίος)	bio-
blood	sanguis, sanguinis	hema, hematos (αἷμα)	hema-, hemato-
body	corpus, corporis	soma, somatos (σῶμα)	somato-
bone	os, ossis	osteon (ὀστέον)	osteo-
muscle	musculus, musculi	mys, myos (μῦς)	myo-
nerve	nervus, nervi	neuron (νεῦρον)	neuro-
skin	cutis, cutis	derma, dermatos (δέρμα)	dermato-

1. Note that most specialized medical terms are derived from Greek, rather than Latin, vocabulary. Almost all English compound forms derived from Greek that are used in medical terminology are learned borrowings.

***Shake, Rattle, and Roll***

Many bones of the human body derive their names from their seeming resemblance to other objects. For example, the collarbone, or *clavicle*, was thought by early anatomists to resemble the shape of a key, and if you hearing ringing in your ears, that's because the auditory *ossicles*<sup>2</sup> are called the *malleus*, *incus*, and *stapes*.

<u>Latin Word</u>	<u>English Meaning</u>
clavus, clavi	key > collarbone (clavicle) <sup>3</sup>
patella, patellae	small pan > kneecap
tibia, tibiae	flute > shinbone
fibula, fibulae	buckle, clamp > leg bone that extends from the knee to the ankle
malleus, mallei	hammer
incus, incudes	anvil
stapes, stapis	stirrup

Like all machines, however, the human body is subject to occasional breakdowns (despite the classical ideal of *Sana mens in corporē sanō*).<sup>4</sup> When this happens, we visit the doctor, and sometimes, we may even end up as patients in the hospital.

<u>Greek or Latin Word</u>	<u>English Meaning</u>
hygieia (ὕγιεια)	health
salus, salutis	health
sanum, sani	healthy
iatros (ἰατρός)	doctor, physician
medicus, medici	healer
-logist (learned borrowing)	specialist
cf. -logy	doctrine, theory, science
hospes, hospitis	host, guest, stranger
morbus, morbi	illness
pator-pati-passum	suffer, endure
cf. pascho (πάσχω)	suffer, endure
cf. pathos (πάθος)	suffering, misfortune

2. What do you think the ending *-cle* signifies?

3. What do you think the suffix *-cle* might indicate?

4. *a sound mind in a sound body*

*Is That English?*

The French word *jargon* originally meant the chattering of birds but now it means a specialized vocabulary used by a particular group or profession that is difficult for others to understand. For example, when the doctor explains, “I’m afraid you have a rather severe bilateral periorbital hematoma,” what he really is saying is “Wow! You’ve got two horrific-looking black eyes.”

**MEDICAL SPECIALTIES**

Today, of course, most doctors are specialists. There are seemingly as many specialties in medicine as there are in the human body, but we can get to the heart of the matter if we are willing to be patient. Let’s start at the top and come face-to-face with what may be bothering us.<sup>5</sup>

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
head	caput, capitis	cephale (κεφαλή)	cephalo-
brain	cerebrum, cerebri	encephalos (ἐγκέφαλος)	encephalo-
eye	oculus, oculi	ophthalmos (ὀφθαλμός)	ophthalmo-
ear	auris, auri	ous, otos (ὠς)	oto-
nose	nasus, nasi	rhis, rhinos (ῥίς)	rhino-
mouth	os, oris	stoma, stomatos (στόμα)	stomato-
tooth	dens, dentis	odous, odontos (ὀδούς)	odonto-
tongue	lingua, linguae	glossa (γλῶσσα) or glotta (γλῶττα)	glosso- glotto-

There are doctors who attempt to straighten us out or get us back on our feet.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
orthon (ὀρθόν)	straight	_____
pes, pedis	foot	_____
pous, podos (πούς)	foot	_____
skeletos (σκελετός)	dried up, a mummy	_____
therapia (θεραπεία)	service, care	_____

There are doctors who specialize in the diseases of particular organs.

5. Note that nearly all the combining forms are Greek in origin.

<i>English Word</i>	<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>Greek Word</i>	<i>Combining Form</i>
belly	abdomen, abdominis	gaster, gastros (γαστήρ)	gastro-
intestine	intestinus, intestini	enteron (έντερον)	entero-
heart	cors, cordis	cardia (καρδία)	cardio-
kidney	renum, reni	nephros (νεφρός)	nephro-
liver		hepar, hepatos (ήπαρ)	hepato-
lung	pulmo, pulmonis	pneumon (πνευμών)	pneumo-

### ***Take a Deep Breath***

South Carolina's state motto is *Dum spiro spero*. "As long as I am breathing, I have hope."

*spiro-spirare-spiratum* = breathe

*spero-sperare-speratum* = hope

Other doctors specialize in particular age groups or in a particular gender.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>Medical Combining Form</i>
gyne, gynecos (γυνή)	woman	gyneco-
aner, andros (άνήρ)	man	andro-
senex, senis	old man	
geron, gerontos (γέρων)	old man	geronto-
juvenis, juvenis	young person	
pes, pedos or paedos (παῖς)	child	ped- or paed-



The Hippocratic Oath that medical students take has its origins in Greek medicine. It is attributed to one of the most famous of ancient Greek healers, Hippocrates.

*“I swear by Apollo, the healer, by Asclepius, by Hygieia and Panacea and all the divinities of healing, and call to witness all the gods and goddesses that I may keep this oath and promise to the best of my ability and judgment . . . that I will use my power to help the sick to the best of my ability and judgment; that I will abstain from harming or wronging anyone by it . . . If, therefore, I observe this oath and do not violate it, may I prosper both in my life and my art, gaining good repute among all men for all time. If I transgress and forswear this oath, may my lot be otherwise.*

<i>Deity</i>	<i>Function</i>
Apollo	Greek god of light, prophecy, and healing but also the deity who brought disease to the world
Asclepius	a half-divine son of Apollo and patron deity of Greek physicians. Not content with healing the sick, he attempted to bring the dead back to life. For this act, Zeus struck him down with a thunderbolt.
Hygieia	the daughter of Asclepius and worshipped as the personification of health
Panacea	said by some to be the daughter of Asclepius. Her name means “All-Healer,” and the word <i>panacea</i> is used for any remedy said to cure all ills and difficulties.

*When I reached the sanctuary, the god Asclepius bade me further to cover my head in rainy weather, wash myself without the aid of a servant, take exercise in the gymnasium, eat bread, cheese, celery, and cabbage lettuce, drink lemon juice and milk, go for walks, and not to omit to make sacrifices.”*

—AELIUS ARISTIDES (second-century CE Greek orator)

**DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT**  
**(or) Doctor, What’s Wrong with Me?**

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
gnosis (γνῶσις)	knowledge
bacterion (βακτήριον)	rod, stick
cf. bacillus, bacilli	small rod
frango-frangere-fractum	break
fungus, fungi	sponge
cf. spongos (σπόγγος)	sponge

trauma (τραῦμα)	wound
virus, viri	poison
-osis <sup>6</sup>	diseased condition of
-itis	inflammation of
-oma	swelling
-iasis	diseased condition of
-pathy <sup>7</sup>	diseased condition of <i>or</i> form of treatment
cf. pathos (πάθος)	condition, suffering, misfortune
-plegia	paralysis
-algia	pain
cf. algos (ἄλγος)	pain
-odynia	pain
cf. odyne (ὀδύνη)	pain
-rrhea	flow <i>or</i> discharge
cf. rheo (ρέω)	
-gen, -genic	production of
cf. genos (γένος)	birth, source
manus, manūs	hand
opsis (ὄψις)	sight
cf. opteuo (ὀπτεύω)	see, look at
-tomy	cutting, incision
cf. tomos (τομός)	cutting
-ectomy	cutting out, removal
-stomy	making an opening
cf. stoma (στόμα)	mouth, opening

### ***Take Two Pills and Call Me in the Morning***

When you go to the *pharmacy* to fill a prescription, be very careful. The root of the word is

pharmakos (φαρμακός) = poisoner

## **TO SLEEP, PERCHANCE TO DREAM**

Sometimes, all it takes is a good night's sleep to make us feel better.

6. The suffixes *-osis*, *-itis*, *-oma*, and *-iasis* were used in ancient Greek to form nouns, but they were arbitrarily assigned these meanings in modern medical practice.

7. Don't forget that *-pathy* in its various forms also is used to form non-medical terminology—e.g., *sympathy*, *apathy*, *pathetic*.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
valeo-valēre	be strong, be in good health
cf. valesco-valescere	gain strength, grow strong <sup>8</sup>
hypnos (ὑπνος)	sleep
coma (κῶμα)	deep sleep
somnus, somni	sleep
sopor, soporis	deep sleep

Morpheus, the son of Somnus, was the bringer of dreams and took his name from the fact that he could assume various shapes and forms.

morphe (μορφή) = shape, form

But sleep doesn't cure everything for we are mortal . . .



Mosaic "skull"  
representing the  
finality of death. It was  
uncovered in the dining  
room of a house in  
Pompeii, Italy. (Museo  
Archeologico Nazionale,  
Naples). Superstock.

8. What do you think the suffix *-sco* might indicate?

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
thanatos (θάνατος)	death
mors, mortis	death
morior-mori-mortuum	die

Remember: *De mortuis, nil nisi bonum* = About the dead, [speak] nothing but good.

## ODDS AND ENDS

### ***Dig in Your Heels . . .***

Sometimes a word goes through so many changes of meaning that its original root is obscured. *Recalcitrant*, which now means unmanageable or stubborn, is derived from the Latin *calx, calcis* = heel of the foot. The verb *recalcitrare* originally meant to kick back one's heels and was applied to horses.

### ***Or Change Your Mind!***

Some words are nice to know just because they sound so interesting. *Tergiversate* means to change your mind or opinion, but its literal meaning is derived from

*tergum, tergi* = back

*verso-versare-versatum* = turn

If you don't turn your back on an idea, you may turn your mind toward it in a critical way. Thus we have the verb *animadvert*, which originally meant to take notice of but which has now come to mean to criticize or pay attention to in a negative way.

### ***Looks Can Wound, and Words Can Hurt!***

A *supercilious* individual is contemptuous of others and demonstrates it by raising his eyebrows. *Sarcastic* words can seem to tear at our skin.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
supercilium, supercilii	eyebrow
cf. cilium, cilia	eyelash
sarx, sarcos (σάρξ)	flesh
cf. sarcazo (σαρκάζω)	tear flesh

### ***Living Well Is the Best Revenge***

Leading a healthy lifestyle is all very well and good, but perhaps the French *bon vivant* who is leading the Italian *la dolce vita* has a better time. Of course one could just shrug one's shoulders and say, *C'est la vie*. What are the Latin roots of these French and Italian phrases and what do these expressions mean?

***Ave Atque Vale!***

The Roman equivalent of *Have a good day* was the phrase *Avē atque valē*. Although both imperative forms mean “Be well” or “Be strong,” they also came to be used as a word of greeting or of goodbye. Thus the phrase is often translated “Hail and farewell!”

*aveo-avēre* = be well

Of course, not everyone was so joyful about saying goodbye. Gladiators about to enter the arena faced the emperor and declared, *Ave, Imperator. Nos morituri te salutamus* (“Hail, Emperor. We who are about to die salute you”).

***An Ounce of Prevention***

Although modern medicine emphasizes the prevention of disease through immunization, diet, and good health habits, many things can go wrong with the human body. The medical profession, however, offers a variety of approaches to diagnose, treat, and cure illness—or at least to alleviate its symptoms.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
dieta (δίαιτα)	way of life
levis, levis	light
munus, muneris	gift, reward

***Holy Cow!***

For millennia, smallpox was a dreaded disease that caused hundreds of millions of deaths in every part of the world. In 1796, the English physician Edward Jenner tested a common observation that dairymaids who had contracted cowpox, a much milder disease, from the infected udders of cows, had immunity to smallpox. In what was probably a medically unethical experiment, he inoculated a small boy with cowpox. The boy recovered rather quickly, with no lasting effects. Two months later, Jenner inoculated the boy with pus from a smallpox lesion, but the child did not develop the disease.

*vacca, vaccae* = cow



Perseus slaying the gorgon Medusa, sixth century BCE. Selinunte, Sicily.





## 13: EXERCISES

**A. Answer each question or fill in the blanks with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.**

1. A *sanguivorous* animal \_\_\_\_\_.
2. What is the Latin cognate of *sympathy*? \_\_\_\_\_
3. A *corpuscle* is a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. An *ossuary* is a \_\_\_\_\_ are stored.
5. *Psychosomatic* medicine examines the interaction between the \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A *subcutaneous* injection is given \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A *corpulent* individual is \_\_\_\_\_. What's the matter with him? \_\_\_\_\_
8. The doctor said he could not detect my *vital* signs, but I was sure that I was still \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A *patient* is supposed to \_\_\_\_\_ her illness.
10. He moved to a more *salubrious* climate in the hope it would bring him \_\_\_\_\_.
11. A *sanitarium* is a \_\_\_\_\_ an individual hopes to become \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The Latin cognate of *hypodermic* is \_\_\_\_\_.
13. If an individual's beliefs have become *ossified*, they have been \_\_\_\_\_ as hard as \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Is it possible that the Roman poet P. Ovidius *Naso* had a prominent \_\_\_\_\_?
15. *Binoculars* allow us to see with \_\_\_\_\_.
16. Someone who is *cerebral* uses her \_\_\_\_\_ when making decisions.
17. What skill does a *multilingual* person have? \_\_\_\_\_
18. What is the Greek equivalent of *multilingual*? \_\_\_\_\_



19. He said, "I'm thinking about having a *rhinoplasty* done," but I told him his \_\_\_\_\_ looked just fine.
20. An *electroencephalogram* is \_\_\_\_\_ about the activity of the \_\_\_\_\_.
21. A *pulmonary* function test measures the capacity of your \_\_\_\_\_.
22. A *misogynist* \_\_\_\_\_.
23. A *captain* is the \_\_\_\_\_ of a military unit.
24. *Cordial* feelings arise in the \_\_\_\_\_.
25. A *periodontist* takes care of the area \_\_\_\_\_ your \_\_\_\_\_.
26. A *gastronome* is \_\_\_\_\_ by his \_\_\_\_\_.
27. What is the aural/oral method of teaching a foreign language? \_\_\_\_\_
28. What is the literal meaning of *anemia*? \_\_\_\_\_. What is its current medical usage? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its meaning in the following sentence? *The stock market's performance today was anemic.* \_\_\_\_\_
29. An *androgynous* creature displays the characteristics of both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
30. What is the literal meaning of *mortify*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is its current meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
31. A *traumatic* event is one that \_\_\_\_\_ you deeply.
32. The dentist said to me, "I can see that you're suffering from odontalgia." "Yeah," I said, "I certainly do have a \_\_\_\_\_."
33. The nineteenth-century American poet William Cullen Bryant wrote a work titled *Thanatopsis*. What was its theme? \_\_\_\_\_
34. A *prognosticator* thinks he can \_\_\_\_\_ the future \_\_\_\_\_ it happens.
35. *Iatrogenic* illness is \_\_\_\_\_.
36. The word *manuscript* originally referred to a document that had been \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_. What is its current meaning? \_\_\_\_\_
37. If your teacher's lecture acts as a *soporific*, it may \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_.

38. An *agnostic* says the proof of the existence of an ultimate cause of the universe is \_\_\_\_\_ able to be \_\_\_\_\_.
39. A \_\_\_\_\_ examination is done *after the death* of an individual.
40. The doctor recommended that I undergo an *encephalectomy* but wasn't sure that I wanted my \_\_\_\_\_ to be \_\_\_\_\_.
41. A *malleable* metal can be \_\_\_\_\_ into a shape. What does the word *malleable* mean when applied to a person? \_\_\_\_\_

**B. What are the literal meanings and current usages of the following words?**

	<i>English Word</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current Usage</i>
42.	empathy	_____	_____
43.	sympathy	_____	_____
44.	apathy	_____	_____
45.	antipathy	_____	_____
46.	dermatology	_____	_____
47.	hematology	_____	_____
48.	neurology	_____	_____
49.	octopus	_____	_____
50.	tripod	_____	_____
51.	centipede	_____	_____
52.	biped	_____	_____

**C. All of the following words are derivatives of the Latin verb *valeo-valēre*. What is the present meaning of each word? Construct individual sentences that contain one of the words. Make sure your sentences make sense and demonstrate that you understand the meaning of the word—for example, “Despite their *valiant* efforts, they were not *strong* enough to beat back the enemy.”**

	<i>English Word</i>	<i>Current Meaning</i>	<i>Sentence Containing the Word</i>
53.	prevail	_____	_____
54.	evaluate	_____	_____
55.	prevalent	_____	_____
56.	valor	_____	_____

**D. Answer each question or fill in the blanks with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.**

57. When your mother told me that you were *in the arms of Morpheus*, she was just being elegant. What she really meant is that you were \_\_\_\_\_.
58. A *gerontologist* \_\_\_\_\_ the behavior and health of \_\_\_\_\_.
59. I hate the term *senior citizen*. It merely reminds me that I am \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else.
60. While I looked on in horror, that previously well-behaved child suddenly *morphed* into a terrifying monster. What is the Greek root of this word and what is its meaning in this sentence?  
\_\_\_\_\_
61. His *puerile* behavior made me realize that although he was a grown man, emotionally he was still a \_\_\_\_\_.
62. My *remuneration* for the job was so small that I did not feel that I had been \_\_\_\_\_ for my hard work.
63. His *virulent* attacks on me made me feel as if I had been \_\_\_\_\_.
64. Although the politicians said the new law would be a *panacea* for our difficulties, I knew it would not be a \_\_\_\_\_.
65. A muscle supposedly resembles a \_\_\_\_\_ in its movements.
66. When my mother said that she would *decapitate* me if I did not clean my room, she was threatening to remove my \_\_\_\_\_ from my body if I did not obey her order.
67. What does a *pathogen* do? \_\_\_\_\_
68. Under a system of *primogeniture*, the \_\_\_\_\_ child inherits his parents' property.
69. *Maintain* entered into English through French. Can you figure out its Latin roots? \_\_\_\_\_
70. What are the two different meanings of *invalid*?
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_

71. I am *becoming old* and realize that I am merely feeling the effects of \_\_\_\_\_.
72. He was such a terrible person that although he had died, I could not say anything good about him. What Latin adage was I ignoring? \_\_\_\_\_

### E. Breaking Up is Hard to Do ...

People and things can be broken in a number of ways. What are the current English meanings of the following words?

English Word	Current Meaning	English Word	Current Meaning
73. fragment	_____	77. fraction	_____
74. fractious	_____	78. refraction	_____
75. frail	_____	79. frangible	_____
76. infraction	_____	80. fragile	_____

Choose four of the words listed above, and construct four sentences that include those words. Make sure that your sentence makes it clear that you understand the meaning of the word. And, as always, the sentence must make grammatical (and logical) sense.

Word Chosen	Sentence
81. _____	_____
82. _____	_____
83. _____	_____
84. _____	_____

### F. Watch Where You Throw That Thing.

Sometimes a doctor will recommend an *injection* of a drug in order to relieve your symptoms or even to effect a cure.

*jacio-jacere-jactum* (in compounds, *-jicio*, *-jectum*) = throw, hurl

Now figure out the literal meaning and give the current usage of each of the words listed.

	<i>English Word</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Current Meaning</i>
85.	dejected	_____	_____
86.	conjecture	_____	_____
87.	ejection	_____	_____
88.	trajectory	_____	_____
89.	abject	_____	_____
90.	interjection	_____	_____
91.	project (noun)	_____	_____
92.	project (verb)	_____	_____

**G. Choose four of the words listed above and construct sentences that include those words. Make sure that your sentence makes it clear that you understand the meaning of the word. And, as always, the sentence must make grammatical (and logical) sense.**

	<i>Word Chosen</i>	<i>Sentence</i>
93.	_____	_____
94.	_____	_____
95.	_____	_____
96.	_____	_____

97. What activity are you engaged in when you osculate? \_\_\_\_\_

# IT'S AN ACADEMIC QUESTION



Sappho, Greek poet, sixth century BCE. Naples Museum, Italy.

*“Demetrius summoned Stilpo, the philosopher, and asked him whether  
anyone had robbed him of anything. ‘No one,’ said Stilpo,  
‘for I saw no one carrying away knowledge.’”*

—PLUTARCH (first-century CE Greek essayist), *The Life of Demetrius*

GREEK AND ROMAN EDUCATION

Although students may think that attending school is an occupation as difficult and demanding as any job—and what is more, an absolute necessity for future success—most ancient Greeks and Romans viewed education or learning anything beyond the basic skills as a luxury available only to those who had money, and therefore the leisure, to devote themselves to study and the pursuit of knowledge.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
educō-educare-educatum cf. duco-ducere	train, rear; educate
pedia (παιδεία)	education, culture
encyklios pedia (ἐγκύκλιος)	“encircling” education, general knowledge
pedagogos (παιδαγωγός)	The slave who accompanied a child to school. The Romans applied the term <i>paedagogus</i> more generally to one who taught young children.
scholē (σχολή)	leisure
ludus, ludi cf. ludo-ludere-lusum	sport, diversion, joke; school
studeo-studēre	play, joke, mock be eager for, be diligent

There were various forms of rudimentary instruction in classical Athens: reading and writing, poetry and music, and athletics—all for a fee. Although the Greeks never mandated universal compulsory education, many Greek cities gradually began to supervise education, with the help of wealthy benefactors who provided endowments and paid teachers’ salaries. Pedagogy was grounded in memorization and recitation, and discipline was strict.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
rude, rudis	rough, unskilled
erudio-erudire-eruditum	polish, educate
tueor-tuēri-tuitum	look after, guard
tutor, tutoris	guardian, protector
disco-discere	learn
discipulus or discipula	pupil
disciplina, disciplinae	instruction, learning
doceo-docēre-doctum	show, teach
didacton (διδάκτον)	taught
memoria, memoriae	memory

## Higher Education

Once the fundamentals had been mastered, it was possible to continue one's education in a variety of subjects. Participation in public life demanded an ability to speak and argue well, and *sophistae*, men who claimed to teach not only the skills of persuasive rhetoric and oratory but also practical wisdom, often commanded large fees. Education thus came to be seen as a pragmatic means of producing good citizens and promoting cultural traditions. Not everyone approved of the sophists' teaching methods or their goals, however. Plato's denunciation of this kind of instruction in which "the weaker argument is made to seem the stronger" gave the term *sophist* the pejorative meaning it has today.

At Plato's school, the Academy, and at the Lyceum of Aristotle, advanced instruction was given in philosophy, mathematics, and science. The curriculum of the liberal arts, the product of the faculty of these institutions as well as the sophists, became the foundation of higher learning in Europe and forms the basis of education in the modern college and university. Of course, it wasn't always just seminars and lectures and a lot of hard work; campus life clearly held some pleasures, most notably *symposia*.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
oro-orare-oratum	speak, pray
sophon (σοφόν)	wise
sophistes (σοφιστής)	expert, teacher
pragma, pragmatos (πράγμα)	matter, affair
curro-currere-cursum	run
curriculum, curricula	running, race, racecourse
semen, seminis	seed, origin
seminarium, seminarii	garden, nursery
facultas, <sup>1</sup> facultatis	skill, ability.
campus, campi	plain, field
symposion (συμπόσιον)	drinking party

## BOOKS AND LIBRARIES

*"Of the making of books there is no end, and much study wearies the body."*

—ECCLESIASTES 12:12

The first organized research library was said to have been established by Aristotle at the Lyceum, but certainly the largest and most famous library in antiquity was founded

---

1. What is the Latin root of this word?





Virgil Mosaic. Bardo National Museum, Tunis.

in the third century BCE at Alexandria in Egypt. It is claimed by contemporary sources that the library contained 700,000 volumes. Associated with the library was a museum, an institute for advanced research under the aegis of the government, where scholars catalogued and edited much of the canon of ancient Greek literature.

The production of books was a difficult and laborious task since each text had to be copied by hand. Errors were inevitable. Most volumes were written on rolls of papyrus although parchment, made from treated animal skins, was also used. The *codex*, forerunner of the modern book with bound pages, was not in common use until the second century CE. Now, of course, with the use of computers and the electronic transmission, storage, and retrieval of information, some people believe that printed books may go the way of the feather pen and inkwell.



Mosaic of a cyclops,  
fourth century CE.  
Piazza Amerina, Sicily.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
biblion (βιβλίον)	book
bibliotheca (βιβλιοθήκη)	library
liber, libri	book
librarium, librarii	library
aegis (αἴγῑς)	shield, protection
volumen, voluminis	roll, book
volvo-volvere-volutum	turn, roll
papyrus (πάπυρος)	Egyptian plant used to make paper
codex, codicis	block of wood, tablet; book

ODDS AND ENDS

*Going Around in Circles*

*Research*, the foundation of all good scholarship, is derived from the Latin verb *circo-circare* = go around

*Stop, Thief!*

The root of the word *plagiarism* reveals just how serious a crime it is.  
*plagio-plagiare-plagiatum* = steal, kidnap

*Talking May Be Hazardous to Your Mental Health*

We have already seen that there are a great many Latin verbs that mean “speak.” Some of them produce derivative nouns and adjectives that go beyond plain talking. Which words that have to do with speech can you find in the following sentence? “After taking elocution lessons, what fatal pronouncement did the loquacious oracle vocalize when it predicted your future?”

*Get to the Point*

Although many students find it hard to believe, punctuation is important for understanding the meaning of a sentence. Ancient Greek and Latin texts not only had no punctuation but no spaces between words. These marks were invented by the librarians in Alexandria, but it was not until the ninth century CE that they were used with any regularity. So consider yourself lucky because otherwise you might get the wrong idea from this sentence: “As we sat down to eat my father made a speech.”

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
sententia, sententiae	opinion
pungo-pungere-punctum	pierce, prick, make a small hole
periodos (περίοδος)	going around, circuit
comma (κόμμα)	that which is cut off
colon (κῶλον)	member, part of a clause
hyphen (ὑφέν)	in one; as a single word
apostrophe (ἀποστροφή)	turning back or away from
parenthesis (παρένθεσις)	insertion, injection



## 14: EXERCISES

**A. Answer the following questions or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that the sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.**

1. Our *illusions* help us \_\_\_\_\_ with reality.
2. A good *educator* should \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge from her *students* who are, of course, \_\_\_\_\_ to learn.
3. A *scholar* needs \_\_\_\_\_ to do *research* or else he will \_\_\_\_\_ in confusion.
4. What are two different current usages of *rude*?
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_
5. An *autodidact* is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. His *disciples* wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ what he had to say.
7. The first question a *pragmatist* asks is "What can I \_\_\_\_\_?"
8. What is a *retorical* question? \_\_\_\_\_ Can you give an example? \_\_\_\_\_
9. He was employing so many deceptive and even false arguments that everyone accused him of \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The speaker delivered an *encomium* to the mayor because she wished to \_\_\_\_\_ him.
11. Her eyes \_\_\_\_\_ over the newspaper as she gave the headlines a *cursory* glance.
12. When the criminal *confessed*, he \_\_\_\_\_ what he had done.
13. What are two different usages of *faculty*?
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_

14. If scholars got at the root of *symposium*, they would do more \_\_\_\_\_ than talking when they met.
15. Freud was a *seminal* figure in modern psychology because his work was the \_\_\_\_\_ for future work in the field.
16. *Illegible* writing \_\_\_\_\_.
17. When Roman law was *codified*, it was \_\_\_\_\_ into a \_\_\_\_\_.
18. What are the Spanish and French words for *library*?
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
19. *Noncanonical* works are those that lie outside the \_\_\_\_\_ of what is acceptable.
20. His sentences were so *convoluted* that they were all \_\_\_\_\_.
21. A *fabulous* party is worth \_\_\_\_\_ about.
22. We all wish we had a *tutelary* spirit who would \_\_\_\_\_ us from harm.
23. He had only a *rudimentary* education so he was \_\_\_\_\_ in reading.
24. Her *encyclopedic* memory contained all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_.
25. His behavior was so *ludicrous* that we thought he was \_\_\_\_\_.
26. What are two different usages of *oratory*?
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
27. The project was done under the *aegis* of the mayor's office. What does *aegis* mean in this context? \_\_\_\_\_
28. What is the current usage of the word *voluminous*? \_\_\_\_\_ Can you figure out how it got this meaning? \_\_\_\_\_

29. What are two different usages of *tuition*?

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

How are these usages related? \_\_\_\_\_

30. It was difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ of him, even after his death, but the minister delivered a moving *eulogy*.

31. A *plagiarist* \_\_\_\_\_ someone else's ideas or words.

32. What is the difference in meaning between *famous* and *infamous*? \_\_\_\_\_

33. Even as I stood up to speak I couldn't make up my mind: should I flatter the mayor with a \_\_\_\_\_ or harshly attack him in a \_\_\_\_\_?

34. The words *punctuation* and *punctual* have the same Latin root but very different meanings. Do an etymological search to see how each word evolved into its present meaning.

*punctuation*: \_\_\_\_\_

*punctual*: \_\_\_\_\_

## B. Playing Around

**Construct sentences using the following words. Your sentences need to indicate that you know the meaning of the word.**

35. collusion: \_\_\_\_\_

36. delusion: \_\_\_\_\_

37. prelude: \_\_\_\_\_

38. interlude: \_\_\_\_\_

39. allusion: \_\_\_\_\_

**C. Here are some more words, some of them quite elegant, that came into English unchanged from either Greek or Latin. Use your unabridged dictionary to find their original meanings and current usages.**

	<b>Greek or Latin Meaning</b>	<b>Current Usage</b>
40. opprobrium	_____	_____
41. veto	_____	_____
42. eureka	_____	_____
43. kudos	_____	_____
44. memento	_____	_____
45. scintilla	_____	_____
46. lacuna	_____	_____
47. enigma	_____	_____
48. stigma	_____	_____
49. item	_____	_____
50. verbatim	_____	_____
51. hiatus	_____	_____
52. interim	_____	_____

# THE CLASSICAL INFLUENCE



Parthenon of Athens, the temple dedicated to Athena,  
protecting goddess of the city of Athens.

*“We Athenians cultivate a taste for the beautiful with moderation  
and we love knowledge without softness.”*

—PERICLES, *Funeral Oration*, in Thucydides

(fifth-century BCE Greek historian and general), *The Peloponnesian War*



EUROPE AND THE CLASSICAL HERITAGE

Western European culture has seen itself as an intellectual heir, in both form and content, to the artistic traditions of Greece and Rome. Although a great variety of non-European cultural forces have also influenced the development of European thought, many of the European traditions of creative expression, from the plastic and decorative arts to architecture and literature, trace their ancestry to the monumental legacy of the civilizations of the classical world.

THE FINE ARTS

The Greek exploration of spiritual and intellectual expression through the plastic arts established the forms and styles that were to become the reference points for all subsequent activity in these creative fields in classical antiquity. It was an influence that survived the end of the classical world. The European fascination with the human form, especially as expressed in sculpture, as well as the ideals of harmony and proportion that provide the basis of classical architecture, perhaps have their origin in the Greek search for rationality, order, and measure in the visible world.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
creo-creare-creatum	bring forth, make
cf. cresco-crescere-cretum	arise, become visible
decus, decoris	ornament, splendor, honor, dignity
cf. decorum	suitable, proper
mnema (μνημα)	monument, remembrance
ratio, rationis	plan, thought; order

*Studying the Classics*

The term *classical* is usually applied to Greek art of the fifth and fourth centuries BCE. More generally, it is used to describe the civilization of Greek and Roman antiquity, and has come to represent a particular artistic or architectural style modeled on Greek and Roman prototypes.

*classis* = type, class

*classicus* = belonging to a class > belonging to the highest class



Fifth-century BCE vase painting of a cithara player. (Antiken-Sammlungen, Munich). *Photograph by Claireve Grandjouan.*

### ***Pots and Pans***

Greek pottery was valued both for its utility and its beauty. Often elaborately decorated with scenes or figures from Greek myth, these products—ranging from storage jars to drinking cups—found their way all around the Mediterranean world.

ceramia (κεραμεία)

pottery

## **CITY PLANNING**

The Romans, whose aesthetic tastes were in part influenced by Greek models, were innovators as well, especially in the realms of public and private architecture and city planning.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
polis (πολίς)	city
urbs, urbis	city
rus, ruris	countryside
porta, portae	city gate
agora (ἀγορά)	place of assembly, marketplace
forum, fori	marketplace, a place of public business
circus, circi	circle, racecourse
aedes, aedis	room
cf. aedificium, <sup>1</sup> aedificii	building
domus, domi	house
camera, camerae	vault, private room
cella, cellae	small room
fenestra, fenestrae	window
murus, muri	wall
cubiculum, cubiculi	bedroom
cf. cubo–cubare–cubitum <sup>2</sup>	lie down
Palatium, Palatii	one of the seven hills of Rome and one on which the Emperor Augustus built his residence

***Place Your Bets . . .***

The Circus Maximus in ancient Rome was an oval course for chariot-racing, and it is said that it was surrounded by galleries that could accommodate over 100,000 spectators.

**Going Places**

In order to unite the various provinces of an empire that extended from Britain to Mesopotamia and from the Danube to North Africa, Rome built a remarkable system of roads whose remains can be seen even today. The emperor Augustus erected the Golden Milestone in the Roman Forum, and all distances within the empire were measured from this point. It was also from the Golden Milestone that all the major roads within the empire diverged. Thus we have the expression “All roads lead to Rome.” What does this phrase now mean?

1. What Latin verb can you see in this word?  
2. In compounds, *cubo* often takes the form *cumbo–cumbere–cubitum*.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
via, viae	street, road, way
iter, itineris	road, route, journey

## LITERATURE

The ancient Greeks created enduring models for many of the genres of later European literature. Poetry in all its forms as well as tragedy, comedy, and historiography: all can trace their roots to the classical literary traditions.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
musice (μουσική) <sup>3</sup>	arts, letters
litterae, litterarum	literature
hypocrites (ὑποκριτής) <sup>4</sup>	one who plays a part, an actor
protagonistes (πρωταγωνιστής)	leading actor
histrion, histrionis	actor
actor, actoris <sup>5</sup>	actor
drama (δρᾶμα)	deed; an action represented on the stage
historia (ἱστορία)	inquiry
hymnos (ῥυμνος)	song in praise of a deity
paean (παιάν)	song of thanksgiving to Apollo, the god of healing

## THEATER

Although its exact origins are a matter of debate, it is clear that Greek theater had its beginnings in religious ritual: tragedies and comedies were performed in honor of Dionysus, the god of wine and fertility, who promised his worshippers release from the constraints of ordinary life. Attending the festival of Dionysus, at which the plays were performed, was a religious, civic, and perhaps psychological obligation. The Greek philosopher Aristotle, in his definition of the function of tragedy, said that it was the representation (*mimesis*) of an action that by means of arousing “pity and fear” in the individual attempted to purge him of these emotions through the act of *catharsis*.

The production of the tragedies, which for the most part drew their themes and plots from Greek myth, was part of a competition subsidized by the wealthiest citizens, who paid the costs, which included the training of the dramatic chorus, as a

3. The word *musice* is applied to all the arts in the domain of the Muses, the goddesses of the arts.

4. This word also has a pejorative meaning both in ancient Greek and modern usage. What is it?

5. What Latin verb can you see in this word?



Mask of a tragic actor.

civic obligation. The judges, chosen by lot in order to prevent bribery, seem to have based their awards on audience applause.

In Greek theater's most developed form, the cast consisted of three actors (female roles were played by men) and the members of a chorus. Originally the author also acted in the production of his work but eventually the state provided the leading actor. The playwright Sophocles (496–406 BCE), author of *Oedipus* and *Antigone*, is said to have been a skilled musician and graceful dancer as well, who performed in several of his own dramas.

Not all Greek theater was serious and solemn. Comedy, with its sometimes fantastic plots, took pleasure in being raucous and often lewd and in poking fun at popular religious beliefs and social relationships as well as prominent Athenian citizens, politicians, artists, and intellectuals.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
comoedia (κωμῳδία)	revel-song, comedy
cf. comos (κῶμος)	revel, merry-making
tragoedia (τραγωδία)	tragedy <sup>6</sup> (perhaps originally “goat song”?)
catharsis (κάθαρσις)	cleansing, purification
mimesis (μίμησις)	representation, imitation
theatron (θέατρον)	theater
choros (χορός)	originally a round dance in honor of the deity Dionysus, patron of the theater
orchestra (ὀρχήστρα)	place in the theater where the chorus danced
scene (σκηνὴ)	tent, stage wall, stage backdrop
criticon (κριτικόν)	able to judge
cf. crisis (κρίσις)	decision, trial, dispute
plaudo–plaudere–plausum	clap, strike
in compounds, -plodo, -plodere, -plosum	

### *The Muses*

Traditionally every artist claimed that he was inspired by the Muses, the divine daughters of Zeus and the goddess Mnemosyne (Memory). Each of these nine sisters had a particular sphere of creative activity over which she presided.

<i>Goddess</i>	<i>Artistic or Intellectual Realm</i>
Calliope	epic poetry
Clio	history
Erato	lyric poetry
Euterpe	flute playing
Melpomene	tragedy
Polyhymnia	sacred song
Terpsichore	dance
Thalia	comedy
Urania	astronomy

## MUSIC

Much of our musical terminology and many musical instruments—woodwinds, strings, and percussion—have classical roots.

6. Perhaps originally “goat-song”? The etymology of the word *tragedy* is a matter of great debate.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
musice (μουσική)	belonging to the Muses
sono-sonare-sonitum	sound
canto-contare-cantatum	sing
percutio-percutere-percussum	strike
stringo-stringere-strictum	draw tight, bind, cut off
melodia (μελωδία)	song
organon (ὄργανον)	instrument
cornu, cornū	horn
cymbalon (κύμβαλον)	cymbal
tympanon (τύμπανον)	drum
cithara (κίθαρα)	lyre, lute
tuba, tubae	trumpet



Linus, music teacher of the Greek hero Heracles. Heracles was said to have killed Linus after he criticized his student's playing. Staatliches Museum, Schwerin, Germany.



***Practice, Practice, Practice***

If you play an instrument, you are familiar with the terms that are used to describe the various *tempi*, or rates of speed, in a musical composition. Almost all of these terms are Italian since in the seventeenth century, Italian composers were the first to use a system of notation to indicate the speed at which a piece was to be played. Italian is, of course, a direct descendant of Latin. *Tempi* is the plural form of the Italian noun *tempo*. What is its Latin root?

<i>Italian Musical Term</i>	<i>Musical Meaning</i>	<i>Latin Root</i>
<i>allegro</i>	quickly	<i>alacre, alacris</i> = quick, brisk
<i>vivace</i>	lively	<i>vivax, vivacis</i> = brisk, lively
cf. <i>vivo-vivere</i>	live	
<i>presto</i>	very quickly	<i>praesto</i> = available, ready
<i>forte</i>	loudly	<i>forte, fortis</i> = strong, brave
<i>piano</i>	softly	<i>planum, plani</i> = level, even

***Let's Hear It for the Maestro***

The shout of *Encore!* meaning *More!* or *Again!* is derived from the Latin phrase *in hanc horam* (at this time, still, yet). What is the meaning of the word *maestro* and what is its Latin root?

***From A to Z***

The first note on the musical scale in the medieval period was designated by the Greek letter *gamma*, while the final note was called *ut*. Thus the word *gamut*, a contraction of *gamma* and *ut*, was used to denote the entire scale of tones. Today the word is used to mean the entire range of any area—for example, “His emotions ran the gamut from grief to rage.”

**ATHLETICS, COMPETITION, AND EXCELLENCE**

Theater was not the only form of entertainment available to the Greeks and Romans, and the competitive spirit extended into the realm of physical activity. Wrestling, jumping, discus and javelin throwing, and racing were all part of public contests sponsored by the state or by wealthy citizens. Heracles, the mythical Greek hero known for his remarkable strength, was credited with founding the Olympic games, and although they were dedicated to Zeus, the contests in the stadium provided an arena for the demonstration of human excellence. The entrants competed on behalf of their city, and victors often received the same level of public prestige (and rewards) as modern athletes.





Floor mosaic depicting a gladiatorial contest between two pairs of wrestlers, from a second-century CE Roman villa in Nennig, Germany. *Villa Giulia, Rome.*

Sometimes the original purpose of the contest seems to have been lost. Roman gladiatorial combat, for example, probably began as part of a funeral ritual, but by the time of the emperors, sponsorship of these violent spectacles had become merely a means for politicians to win popular support and to keep the populace happy.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
pugno-pugnare-pugnatum	fight
agon (ἄγών)	contest, struggle
athlos (ἄθλος)	contest
sthenos (σθένος)	strength
peto-petere-petitur	seek, ask, strive for
gymnazo (γυμνάζω)	exercise naked, train
arena, arenae	sand, arena, place for contests
stadion (στάδιον)	racecourse
discos (δίσκος)	plate, disc
gladius, gladii	sword
dromos (δρόμος)	running

***Leisure, the Freedom from Activity, Is Legal***

The origin of the word leisure is the Latin *licet* (it is permitted). Can you figure out what other English words might be derived from this Latin word?

***Setting a Record***

According to Greek tradition, when the Athenians defeated the Persians at the Battle of Marathon in 490 BCE, the runner Pheidippides raced the twenty-six miles back to Athens to announce the good news. The word *marathon* now denotes any long race while the suffix *-thon* has been used to coin many new English words, all having the sense of endurance—for example, *telethon* and *walkathon*.

When a fighter fell in the arena, Roman spectators often expressed their feelings. Traditionally, a *thumbs up* gesture indicated that the gladiator should be spared by his opponent; *thumbs down* meant that the victor should show no mercy. The Roman satirist Juvenal declared that the citizens of Rome had become so decadent that they cared only for *panem et circenses*, that is, the free food and public entertainment provided by ambitious politicians eager to buy votes.

<i>Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
ambitio, ambitionis	a going around, canvassing for votes, desire for office
votum, voti	vow, oath
panis, panis	bread

**New Beginnings**

The suffix *-sco* indicates what is called an *inceptive verb*, meaning that the action has just begun or is continuing. Here are a few more verbs that belong in this category.

<i>Latin Inceptive Verb</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
effervesco-effervescere	begin to boil; bubble
adolesco-adolescere-adultum	grow up
coalesco-coalescere-coalitum	grow together, become one
obsolesco-obsolescere-obsoletum	wear out, decay, go out of use



Monumental head from the tomb of Antiochus, first-century BCE ruler of Commagene, on Mt. Taurus in Turkey.



## 15: EXERCISES

Answer each question or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. Make sure that your sentence is grammatically correct. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.

### A. Fine Arts and City Planning

1. A *domesticated* animal should live in your \_\_\_\_\_.
2. By looking at the *itinerary*, I knew which \_\_\_\_\_ he had taken.
3. What is the difference in meaning between *urban* and *urbane*?
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Their *indecorous* behavior was \_\_\_\_\_ at all \_\_\_\_\_ for the occasion.
5. What is the shape of London's Piccadilly *Circus*? \_\_\_\_\_
6. I don't know why my boss was so angry when she found me napping in my *cubicle*. After all, it was designed for \_\_\_\_\_.
7. When he threatened to *defenestrate* me, I moved away \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. As I saw the *portals* close, I knew I'd never get beyond those \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I went to see the *mural* he had painted but they had torn down the \_\_\_\_\_.
10. What activity took place in the Roman *Forum* that gives the word its current usage?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. The house had a *rustic* charm that can only be found in the \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The legislative branch of the U.S. government is *bicameral*. That means it has \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.
13. Although she gave her *rationale* for acting this way, I still don't understand her \_\_\_\_\_.

14. If it is *incumbent* upon you to do a task, the responsibility \_\_\_\_\_ you. What is another current usage of this word? \_\_\_\_\_
15. What Latin word is the etymological connection between *increase* and *crescent*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is the current usage of each word?
- a. increase \_\_\_\_\_
- b. crescent \_\_\_\_\_
16. A *mnemonic* device helps you \_\_\_\_\_ something.
17. I was pleased to get a pay *increment* because that meant my salary would \_\_\_\_\_.
18. When my mother *reiterated* her instructions for the tenth time, I told her she was going \_\_\_\_\_ the same \_\_\_\_\_ again and again.
19. The restrictions placed on the speakers \_\_\_\_\_ further debate.
20. Their *collaboration* was a failure because they were unable to \_\_\_\_\_.
21. I found him in a *recumbent* position. What was he doing? \_\_\_\_\_
22. The words *edifice* and *edification* have the same root but very different meanings. Check your dictionary to see if you can figure out the history of both words.
- a. edifice \_\_\_\_\_
- b. edification \_\_\_\_\_

### **B. Literature, Theater, Music**

23. It was clear he had won *plaudits* for his performance: everyone was \_\_\_\_\_ him.
24. Everyone's *character* has its particular \_\_\_\_\_.
25. The *choreographer* \_\_\_\_\_ for a performance.
26. When I heard the *clamor* in the street, I looked to see who was \_\_\_\_\_.
27. He took a second job to *augment* his wages because he needed to \_\_\_\_\_ his income.
28. We had reached a *crisis* and it was time to make a \_\_\_\_\_.
29. Paying his debts was a *cathartic* experience because it \_\_\_\_\_ him of guilt.

30. I knew he was a *hypocrite* only \_\_\_\_\_ that he was sorry.
31. When the witness *attested* to the evidence he \_\_\_\_\_ its truth.
32. *Cliometrics* is that branch of the study of \_\_\_\_\_ that attempts to \_\_\_\_\_ economic or social facts.
33. If *orchestra* had kept its original meaning, what would happen there? \_\_\_\_\_
34. *Critics* are supposed to be able to \_\_\_\_\_ works of art.
35. I suffered a *concussion* when I was \_\_\_\_\_ on the head.
36. A *cantata* is a musical composition that is meant to be \_\_\_\_\_.
37. What is a *cornucopia*? \_\_\_\_\_. Construct a sentence using the word. \_\_\_\_\_
38. I took *drastic* measures because it was clearly necessary to \_\_\_\_\_ something.
39. If I *agonize* over a decision, I am \_\_\_\_\_ to decide what to do.
40. I started to scream in pain but my mother said, "Stop the *histrionics*. I know you're only \_\_\_\_\_."
41. As the *pantomime* watched me, he \_\_\_\_\_ my actions.
42. A *sonogram* is \_\_\_\_\_ produced by \_\_\_\_\_ waves.
43. She had *terpsichorean* aspirations but unfortunately she couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
44. She wasn't very imaginative: her original thoughts ran the \_\_\_\_\_ from A to B.
45. When I asked him to *clarify* his idea, he tried to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
46. The ear's *tympanic* membrane acts as a \_\_\_\_\_.
47. She \_\_\_\_\_ an exclamation of disgust.
48. In the sentence "He took what I said literally," what is the meaning of *literally*? \_\_\_\_\_
49. What kind of entertainment should be shown at a theater named the *Thalia*? \_\_\_\_\_
50. The teacher said, "Finish your homework with *alacrity*" but I did not do it \_\_\_\_\_.

51. She showed great *fortitude* under stress. I would not have been so \_\_\_\_\_.
52. After the accident, he suffered from *amnesia* and had \_\_\_\_\_ of what had happened.
53. What is the etymology of *viaduct*? \_\_\_\_\_ What is a viaduct? \_\_\_\_\_

### C. Athletics and Contests

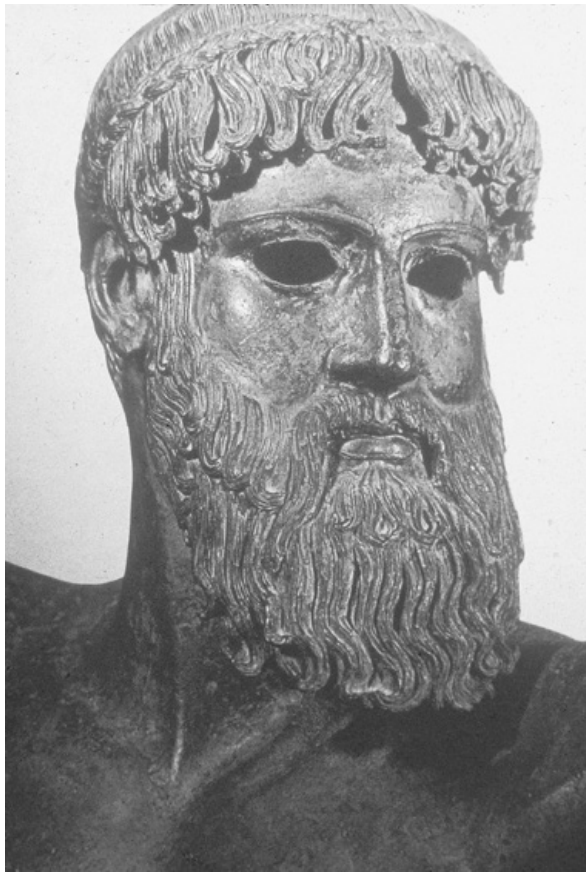
54. An *invincible* enemy is \_\_\_\_\_.
55. A *votive* offering is one made in fulfillment of a \_\_\_\_\_.
56. One's last will and *testament* is a document that has been \_\_\_\_\_.
57. A remark that *impugns* your reputation \_\_\_\_\_ it.
58. If you suffer from *myasthenia*, what is the matter? \_\_\_\_\_
59. A *gymnasium* is a \_\_\_\_\_ people \_\_\_\_\_.
60. He was *casual* in his approach to life. He took things as they \_\_\_\_\_.
61. What is a *palindrome*? \_\_\_\_\_ What are the roots of this word?  
\_\_\_\_\_
62. A *pugnacious* individual is always \_\_\_\_\_ a desire for \_\_\_\_\_.
63. *Callisthenics* is a means of increasing bodily \_\_\_\_\_.
64. A *petition* is a means of \_\_\_\_\_ for something.
65. The chief weapon of a *gladiator* was his \_\_\_\_\_.
66. His political *ambitions* were fueled by a \_\_\_\_\_.
67. The original meaning of the word *arena* was that of ground covered with \_\_\_\_\_. What are two current English usages of this word?
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
68. She entered the *pentathlon* although she wasn't sure she could finish all \_\_\_\_\_.

69. *Syndrome* is a medical term for a group of complaints that \_\_\_\_\_.
70. His *effervescent* personality reminded me of a glass of \_\_\_\_\_ champagne.
71. Physically he was an *adult* but it was clear to everyone that he had never \_\_\_\_\_.
72. Although we tried to form a *coalition*, our ideas never seemed to \_\_\_\_\_.
73. That technology is rapidly becoming *obsolescent* and will soon \_\_\_\_\_.
74. What is the current meaning of *thumbs up*? \_\_\_\_\_
75. Why is the Muse of astronomy named *Urania*? \_\_\_\_\_





# MYTH, RELIGION, AND PHILOSOPHY



Head of bronze statue of Zeus, the ruler of the gods, or Poseidon, whose realm was the sea. (National Museum, Athens).

*Photograph by Claireve Grandjouan.*

*"Homer and Hesiod have attributed to the gods all things that are a shame and a reproach among men: stealing, adultery, and deceiving one another."*

—XENOPHANES (sixth-century BCE Greek philosopher)

GREEK AND ROMAN RELIGION AND MYTH

The traditional religion of the Greeks and Romans was polytheistic in structure, and the Greeks and Romans loved to tell stories about all their gods and goddesses: what they looked like, how they behaved, whom among the mortals and other deities they loved or hated. Although the religious practices and beliefs of the Greek and Roman worlds eventually disappeared, the stories of the gods and heroes contained in classical literature became one of the most important foundation stones of European cultural traditions. The themes of Greek and Roman myth have been used over and over again in literature, art, and music while the names and exploits of the various gods, fabulous creatures, and mortal heroes and heroines still live on in our language.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
religio, <sup>1</sup> religionis	religion
ligo-ligare-ligatum	tie, bind
theos (θεός)	god
deus, dei	god
divus, divi	divine, a god
diva, divae	divine, a goddess
mythos (μῦθος)	story
fabula, fabulae	story
heros (ἥρωας)	hero. The Greek word usually denotes a semi-divine being whose exploits bring him everlasting fame.

THE GREEK AND ROMAN GODS

Just as there are similarities between the Greek and Latin languages because both belong to the Indo-European family and thus have a common ancestry, there are also similarities between the pantheons of their gods for the very same reason. In addition, the Romans adapted and retold many Greek myths for their own use so that often a hero will have both a Greek and a Latin name; for example, Odysseus (Greek) was called Ulysses by the Romans, while the Greek Heracles became the Roman Hercules. Because Roman culture had a more direct influence on European tradition than did Greek, the names of the Roman deities are perhaps more familiar to us.

1. The etymology of *religio* is unclear although most scholars believe that it is derived from the verb *ligo-ligare*, perhaps with the sense of viewing religion as a way of binding the community together or of binding together the world of mortals and the world of the gods.

The Greek Gods and Their Roman Counterparts

<i>Greek Deity</i>	<i>Roman Deity</i>	<i>Function</i>
Aphrodite	Venus	goddess of sexual passion and fertility
Apollo	Apollo	god of light and inspiration; patron of the arts; god of healing
Ares	Mars	god of war
Artemis	Diana	virgin goddess of the hunt; protector of wild animals; guardian of children
Athena	Minerva	goddess of practical wisdom; patroness of arts and crafts
Demeter	Ceres	goddess of grain and fertility
Dionysus (Bacchus)	Dionysus	god of wine and flowing fertility who inspires madness in his followers
Hades, Plutos	Saturnus, Pluto	ruler of the underworld
Hephaestus	Vulcan	blacksmith and fire god
Hera	Juno	wife and consort of Zeus (Jupiter); patroness of the family
Hermes	Mercury	messenger of the gods
Nemesis	Nemesis	goddess of retribution
Pan	Pan	god of shepherds and flocks, often associated with Dionysus
Poseidon	Neptune	ruler of the sea
Prometheus	Prometheus	a Titan who stole fire from the gods and gave it to mortals
the Titans <sup>2</sup>	the Titans	generation of gods who ruled the world before being overthrown by the Olympian gods, who were ruled by Zeus
Zeus	Jupiter, Jove	ruler of the Olympian gods and of mortals

2. The Romans called the Titans, Atlas, Prometheus, Apollo, Dionysus, Pan, the Muses, and Nemesis by their Greek names.

*It's Been Decided*

The limits on human mortality and the constraints placed on the power of free will are embodied in the figures of the Fates, the determiners of human destiny: Clotho (the spinner), Lachesis (the measurer), and Atropos (the cutter). They were envisioned by some ancient writers as three sisters who spun, measured, and cut the thread that is our lifespan.

THE CALENDAR

The English names of the months of the year that we use today are derived from their Latin names although the Roman calendar was structured differently from ours.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
hemera (ἡμέρα)	day
dies, diei	day
mensis, mensis	month
annus, anni	year

The Months

<i>Month</i>	<i>Named For</i>
Januarius	Janus, the two-faced god of doorways, gates, and beginnings
Februa	Februa, a Roman feast of purification held during that month
Martius	Mars, the god of war
Aprilis	etymology unclear but perhaps derived from <i>aperio-aperire-apertum</i> (to open) because April is the time of the blossoming of trees and flowers
Maius	Maia, goddess of fertility
Junius	Juno, the consort of Jupiter
Julius <sup>3</sup>	Julius Caesar, first-century BCE Roman military leader
Augustus	Augustus Caesar, the first Roman emperor (27 BCE–14 CE)
September	the number 7 (the seventh month, beginning with Martius)
October	the number 8 (the eighth month, beginning with Martius)
November	the number 9 (the ninth month, beginning with Martius)
December	the number 10 (the tenth month, beginning with Martius)

3. *Julius* and *Augustus*, dedicated to Julius Caesar and Augustus Caesar, were originally named *Quintilis* (the fifth month) and *Sextilis* (the sixth month).

***What Day Is Today?***

The *Calends* was the first day of the Roman month. Since monthly interest on loans was calculated by the *Calends*, an account book was called a *calendarium*. The only other days of the month noted by the Romans were the *Nones* (the fifth day of the month except in March, May, July, and October, when it fell on the seventh), and the *Ides* (the thirteenth day of the month, except in March, May, July, and October when it fell on the fifteenth). It was not until quite late that the Romans adopted the practice of naming days in a repetitive cycle.

The English names of most of the days of the week are derived from the gods of Germanic myth.

**OTHER TIMES . . .**

<i>Greek or Latin Word or Phrase</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
hora, horae	hour
ante meridiem (a.m.)	before the middle of the day
post meridiem (p.m.)	after the middle of the day
cras	tomorrow
eon (αἰών)	an age, a long period of time
aevum, aevi	an age, a period of time

**OTHER PLACES . . .**

Greek myth describes an often fabulous world whose landscape has become part of our vocabulary.

*Augean Stables*: the stables of King Augeas were so filthy that the Greek hero Heracles, as one of his twelve labors, had to divert two rivers in order to cleanse the stables in a single day.

*Elysium, or the Elysian Fields*: the dwelling place of those few fortunate mortals who had been granted eternal conscious life and happiness by the gods.

*Labyrinth*: a maze built on Crete for King Minos by the famed Greek architect Daedalus in order to imprison the Minotaur, a man-eating creature that was half-bull and half-human. The adjective *labyrinthine* is used to describe a complicated or intricate arrangement or course of events.

*Lethe*: a river in the underworld whose waters caused the dead to forget their past life. *Lethargy* is a state of mental apathy and physical drowsiness.



Temple of Concord, fifth century BCE. Agrigento, Sicily.

*Mount Olympus*: residence of many of the Greek gods, who were thus referred to as “the Olympians.”

*Styx*: the main river in the Underworld and also its boundary. The ancient Greeks believed that in order to enter the realm of Hades, one had to be ferried across the river Styx by a boatman, Charon, at the cost of one obol. Thus the dead were buried with a coin in their mouth. The adjective *stygian* is used to describe a place that is dark and gloomy.

The human imagination is a powerful force, and many of the monsters of classical myth continue to haunt us.

*Cerberus*: a three-headed dog that guarded the entrance to the Underworld. He was friendly to those who entered the house of Hades but ate those who tried to leave. His name can be applied to any fierce guardian or watchman.

*Chimera*: a fire-breathing monster that had the head of a lion, the torso of a goat, and the tail of a snake. The adjective *chimerical* describes something that is wildly fanciful or unrealistic.



Roman river god, first century CE. Museo Capitolino, Rome.

*Harpies*: bird-like, female monsters, greedy and filthy, with women's faces and bodies and bird-like wings and claws, they tormented a number of individuals in Greek myth by snatching away or contaminating their food as they tried to eat. Sometimes seen as the ministers of divine vengeance, they were called "the hounds of Zeus." To call someone (more often a woman!) a harpy is to describe him (or her) as a greedy, grasping individual.

*Medusa*: one of three monstrous Gorgons, she had hair of snakes and her glance turned men into stone. She was slain by the Greek hero Perseus, who gave her head to the goddess Athena. Athena promptly attached the head to her shield. To describe a woman as a gorgon is to say that she is ugly, terrifying, and repulsive.

*Phoenix*: a fabulous bird of great beauty said to live for five hundred years, after which it immolates itself on a pyre and then rises up, once again, from the ashes. The phoenix has come to represent someone or something that has been renewed after its apparent destruction.

*Sirens*: bird-like women who lured sailors to their deaths by singing sweet and entrancing melodies while sitting on treacherous rocks that rose up from the sea. It is now used to describe a seductive woman who entices men by her charms.



*Sphinx*: a winged, female monster who would eat young men who could not answer her riddle “What walks on four legs in the morning, two legs in the afternoon, and three legs in the evening?” She committed suicide when Oedipus gave the correct answer: man. The noun *sphinx* may be used to describe anyone who gives responses that are difficult to interpret.

Other myths have become part of our common cultural vocabulary, for constant allusion is still made to the stories of:

*Amazons*: a race of warrior women who lived without men and who excelled in those activities, such as hunting and fighting, normally considered to belong to the male sphere. The noun *amazon* is now used to describe a tall and physically powerful woman.

*Atlas*: a Titan who was condemned by Zeus to hold the sky on his shoulders. He gives his name to any bound collection of maps or charts.

*King Midas and the Golden Touch*: Because he had done a kindness to the god Dionysus, Midas was granted any wish he might desire. Requesting that everything he touched might turn to gold, Midas was at first delighted with his good fortune but soon begged the god to take back his gift. He had turned his daughter into gold and he was starving to death as well because the food he touched turned to gold before he could eat it. Although the gift of the golden touch proved to be almost disastrous for Midas, we now use the term in a positive way.

*The Labors of Hercules*: Hercules was the greatest of all the ancient mythological heroes. In order to gain immortal fame, he had to perform twelve seemingly impossible labors, including a journey to the Underworld. Hercules has come to represent the unconquerable human spirit in the face of almost insurmountable challenges.

*Pandora's Box*: Pandora, the first woman, who was created by the gods as revenge for Prometheus's theft of fire, was given a box containing all the evils of the world. Instructed not to open it, she disobeyed and released every kind of suffering into the world. Only Hope remained inside the box. The term *Pandora's Box* is used today to mean a source of unforeseen trouble or problems.

*Procrustes*: Procrustes was said to have entertained his guests by inviting them to spend the night. If they did not fit exactly into the bed he offered, he would stretch them on a rack or lop off their head to insure a perfect night's sleep. The adjective *procrustean* is used to describe arbitrary and violent means of ensuring conformity.



Procession in honor of the god Dionysus. *British Museum.*

*Prometheus:* a Titan who stole fire from the gods and gave it to mankind out of pity. As punishment, Zeus had Prometheus bound to a rock where each day an eagle would tear at his liver. Some say that he was freed eventually by Heracles. The adjective *Promethean* means boldly original and creative.

*Proteus:* a god of the sea who, like the water, could change himself into whatever form he wished. The adjective *protean* means extremely variable or changeable.

*Sisyphus:* As punishment for an unspecified crime, Sisyphus was condemned by the gods to forever push a boulder to the top of a hill in the Underworld, only to watch it roll back down again. His name has become synonymous with futility.

*Tantalus:* Tantalus, who either betrayed the secrets of the gods or attempted to trick them into eating human flesh, was also punished in the Underworld. He was forced to stand in a pool of water up to his chin, but when he bent down to quench his overwhelming thirst, the water receded. At the same time above his head hung bunches of fruit, but when he reached up to pick them and appease his insatiable hunger, the fruit was withdrawn beyond his grasp. The adjective *tantalizing* describes something that is extremely desirable but unobtainable.

## TROY

Perhaps the best known and most enduring of all the Greek myths is the cycle of stories that have to do with the Trojan War, a ten-year struggle waged between the city of Troy and Greek forces over the beautiful Helen, wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta. Writers and artists through the ages have continued to draw upon the characters and events that the Greek poet Homer first described in the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* more than 2,700 years ago. The names that figured prominently in the story of Troy are still part of our imaginative vocabulary.

*Apple of Discord:* Eris, the goddess of strife, angered at not being invited to the wedding of the mortal Peleus and the sea goddess Thetis, threw a golden apple inscribed with the words *To the fairest* among the divine guests. The goddesses Athene, Hera, and Aphrodite all laid claim to the apple, each saying she was the fairest, and in their dispute they appealed to Zeus to choose among them.

*The Judgment of Paris:* Zeus, wisely deciding not to get involved when Eris tossed the Apple of Discord among the divine wedding guests, chose Paris, a young Trojan prince, to judge a beauty contest between Athene, Hera, and Aphrodite. Each of the goddesses offered Paris a bribe, but Paris selected Aphrodite as “the fairest” because she promised him Helen.

*Helen:* Helen may have been Paris’s prize, but unfortunately she was married to Menelaus, the king of Sparta. It was Paris’s kidnapping of Helen that led to the outbreak of the Trojan war, and that is why we say Helen’s was the face “that launch’d a thousand ships.”<sup>4</sup>

*Achilles:* The son of Peleus and Thetis, Achilles was the greatest of the Greek heroes to fight at Troy. According to one tradition, his mother dipped him in the river Styx in order to make his body invulnerable. Unfortunately, she was holding him by his heel when she dipped him in the river, which meant his heel was unprotected against a fatal wound. The term *Achilles’ heel* is used to describe a point of emotional or physical vulnerability.

*Myrmidons:* The Myrmidons were Achilles’s loyal followers who accompanied him to Troy. The name is now applied to anyone who blindly follows the commands of his leader.

---

4. Or so said the sixteenth-century English poet and playwright Christopher Marlowe.

*Hector:* In the *Iliad*, Hector is the gallant leader of the Trojan forces; but later traditions depicted him as a domineering bully. Thus, we have the verb *hector*, which means to act or speak in an overbearing way.

*Cassandra:* The daughter of the king of Troy, Cassandra was given the gift of prophecy by Apollo, who hoped to win her love. When she spurned him, the god did not take away his gift of prophecy but ordained that all Cassandra's prophecies should not be believed. For this reason, even though Cassandra foresaw the destruction of Troy, her prophetic warnings were ignored. Her name is now applied to anyone who predicts gloom and disaster.

*Trojan Horse:* After ten years of fighting, the Greeks still had not taken Troy for the city had strong and well-defended walls. It was only through the trick of the wooden horse that the Greeks were able to gain entry into the city and then destroy it. Although the Trojan seer Laocoon warned them not to do it, the Trojans dragged a huge horse—built by the Greeks with the help of Athena—inside the city gates, not knowing the horse was filled with Greek soldiers. That night while the Trojans slept, the Greek soldiers climbed out and overwhelmed the city. The term *Trojan horse* is now applied to anyone or anything that seeks to destroy from within.

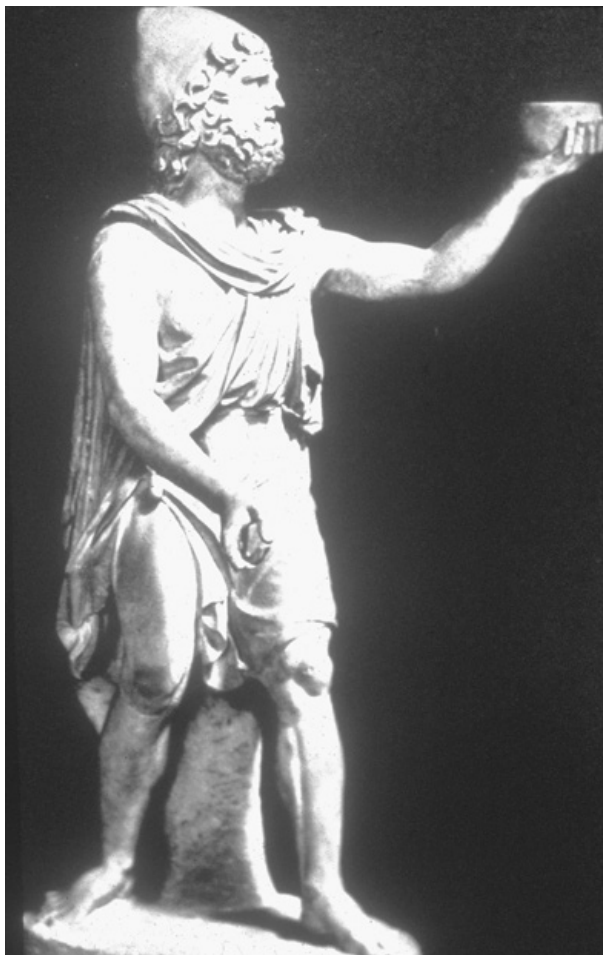
*Stentor:* Stentor was the herald of the Greek army and had a voice as loud as those of fifty men. The adjective *stentorian* is now applied to a person with a loud and powerful voice.

*Odysseus:* Odysseus was a brave and clever fighter at Troy, but his confrontation with danger really began on his journey back to his native Ithaca, a trip that took him nine years. Despite his extraordinary adventures, recorded in the *Odyssey*, all that Odysseus longed for was to return home. His travels have come to represent a long and wandering journey.

*Penelope:* While Odysseus wandered, Penelope, his faithful wife at home, kept off the advances of the many suitors who wished to marry her and gain Odysseus's kingdom. By a variety of clever stratagems she fended them off until Odysseus's return. Penelope became the model of the faithful wife.

*Mentor:* Mentor, a friend of Odysseus, gave helpful advice and counsel to Odysseus's son Telemachus while Odysseus was away at war. Mentor's name now means a wise counselor or teacher.

The story of the Trojan War and the aftermath of Troy's destruction was retold by the Roman poet Vergil in his epic poem the *Aeneid*. The Romans traditionally



Odysseus offering wine to the cyclops Polyphemus. Vatican Museum.

claimed to be the descendants of those few brave Trojan warriors, led by the hero Aeneas, who made their way out of the burning city to find a new home in Italy. The *Aeneid*, modeled on both the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*, contains many notable lines of Latin verse, among the most famous of which are

*Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentis* (“Whatever it is, I fear the Greeks, even those bearing gifts”).

*Varium et mutabile semper femina* (“A woman is a fickle and changeable thing”).

### ANCIENT PEOPLES AND PLACES

Personalities from Greek and Roman history, as well as real places in the ancient world, have also found their way into the English vocabulary.

*Arcadia.* a region in southwestern Greece that was viewed by ancient poets as a place of bucolic simplicity. Later writers continued to celebrate that tradition, and the adjective *arcadian* is now used to describe an idealized rural existence.

*Draconian.* A seventh-century BCE Athenian lawgiver, Draco produced a legal code so harsh in its penalties that his laws were said to have been written in blood, not ink. Any unusually severe measure may be described as *draconian*.

*Laconic.* The ancient city-state of Sparta was located in a region of Greece called Laconia. Since the Spartans were known for the brevity of their speech, the adjective *laconic* may be used to describe an individual who is concise in his remarks.

*Mausoleum.* The widow of the fourth-century BCE king Mausolus built a tomb for her husband at Halicarnassus that was so spectacularly decorated with sculpture it became synonymous with an elaborate monument to the dead.

*Meander.* The Maeander River, in Asia Minor, was noted for its twisted and winding path to the Aegean Sea. The verb *meander* now means to go or behave in an aimless or wandering way.

*Pyrrhic Victory.* In the third century BCE, Pyrrhus, the king of Epirus, fought and won many battles against the Romans but at such great cost that he is reported to have said, "One more victory like this and I am undone." A pyrrhic victory, then, is one that is gained at too great a cost.

*Rich as Croesus.* Croesus, a sixth-century BCE king of Lydia, was so rich that his name has come to mean a person of untold wealth.

*Solecism.* The inhabitants of ancient Soloi were so famous for their terrible Greek grammar that they gave their name to the incorrect usage of language or manners.

*Solon.* An Athenian leader of the early sixth century BCE, Solon was noted for his keen sense of justice. His social and political reforms laid the groundwork for Athenian democracy, and his name now may be used to describe a wise statesman or lawmaker.

*Spartan.* The inhabitants of Sparta prided themselves on their rigorous, disciplined, and simple way of life. Someone who lives in this way may be said to have a *spartan* lifestyle.

*Sybaritic.* The inhabitants of the ancient Greek city of Sybaris, on the other hand, were noted for their luxurious and excessive way of life. Although the city was

destroyed in the sixth century BCE, it survives in the adjective *sybaritic*, which means an enjoyment of sensuous and indulgent pleasures.

## PHILOSOPHY

*Philosophy* means literally “love of wisdom,” but for the Greeks, philosophy had as its original impetus the search for the causes of things both physical and ethical. The earliest Greek philosophers, who were called *physicists*, investigated the nature and constituent parts of the physical cosmos and the relationship between the world of nature and the world of human activity. The focus of later Greek and Roman philosophy, however, was the realm of human action, behavior, and spiritual goals: What is the best way to act in this world? What is the best form of polity? Is it possible to achieve happiness? Is the human soul immortal? The various schools of ancient philosophy still find expression today not only in the questions the Greeks and Romans raised and the ideals they pursued but in their language and forms of argumentation as well.

### Ancient Greek Schools of Philosophy

*Cynicism*: the doctrines of a school of Greek philosophy that preached independence of action and complete freedom from social conventions. The etymology of the name is a matter of debate. The root of the word is *kyon*, *kynos* (κύων = dog), and it has been suggested that the name derived from the fact that the Cynics were noted for their rude behavior and took special pleasure in violating the rules of polite society. Perhaps the most famous of the Cynics was the fourth-century BCE Diogenes, who is said to have gone about with a lantern, saying that he was looking for an honest man. Today the word *cynic* is used to describe someone who questions social values and distrusts human sincerity and moral purpose.

*Epicureanism*: the teachings of the fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher Epicurus, who preached that the highest good is pleasure, which his followers interpreted as freedom from pain or disturbance but which his critics condemned as the pursuit of unbridled freedom and self-indulgence. The adjective is now used to refer to the enjoyment of sensual pleasures, especially in eating and drinking.

*Hedonism*: a doctrine that teaches that pleasure or happiness is the highest good. The noun is derived from *hedone* (ἡδονή) and now connotes an excessive devotion to physical pleasure.



*Platonism:* the doctrine of the fourth-century BCE Greek philosopher Plato and his successors. Because Plato taught that the highest form of love was that of the soul for the Good, the term *platonic* is most often used now to refer to a spiritual love untouched by physical desire.

*Skepticism:* The skeptic philosophers taught that since sense perceptions are deceptive, there is no possibility of absolute knowledge of anything and therefore one should withhold judgment about everything. Pyrrhon, the fourth-century BCE founder of the school, taught that nobody has yet found the truth so why should we distress ourselves? Be genuinely indifferent to all that happens, Pyrrhon said, for appearances are enough to live by. A *skeptic* is a person who doubts or questions matters that are generally accepted.

*Stoicism:* the doctrines of the school of philosophy founded by Zeno in the fourth century BCE. The word *stoic* is now used to refer to one of the central teachings of the school, that one should submit uncomplainingly to fate and just “go with the flow.” The adjective is derived from *stoa* (στοά), a detached portico in Athens where Zeno supposedly taught his followers.

Forms of Philosophical and Logical Argumentation

Latin Phrase	Literal Meaning	Meaning in Logical Argumentation
<i>a fortiori</i>	from the stronger	for a still stronger reason
<i>a posteriori</i>	from the one after	from effect to cause; based on observation or experience
<i>a priori</i>	from the one before	from cause to effect; validity independent of experience
<i>ad hoc</i>	to this thing	for a special purpose
<i>ad hominem</i>	against the man	appealing to prejudice or emotion
<i>ad rem</i>	to the matter	relevant or pertinent



THE LANGUAGE OF CHRISTIANITY

Because Greek was the primary language of many of the earliest Christian writers, much of the sacred language of Christianity is Greek in origin.

<i>Greek or Latin Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>	<i>English Derivative</i>
biblos (βίβλος)	book	bible
dogma (δόγμα)	decree, opinion, teaching	dogma
doxa (δόξα)	belief, opinion	as a suffix, -doxy
doctrina, doctrinae	teaching, instruction	teaching
apostello (ἀποστέλλω)	send out	apostle
martyr, martyros (μάρτυρ)	witness	martyr
oecumene (οἰκουμένη)	inhabited world	ecumenical
angelos (ἄγγελος)	messenger	angel
ecclesia (ἐκκλησία)	assembly	ecclesiastic
credo-credere-creditum	believe	credo, creed
sacrum, sacri	sacred, holy	sacred
templum, templi	temple	temple

**Sacred Space**

The root of the English word *church* is almost unrecognizable in its Anglicized form. It is derived from *cyriakon* (κυριακόν = belonging to the Lord). The Greek-based word was introduced into Old English at the time of the conversion of the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity in 597 CE.



## 16: EXERCISES

**A. Which mythological figures or places appear in this paragraph, and what does each of them represent?**

*The plutocrats looked down from the Olympian heights of the corporate boardroom as they watched the plebeians on the stock exchange floor panic at the mercurial behavior of the prices of cereal futures. Despite their saturnine expressions, the titans of industry actually felt jovial at this turn of events.* \_\_\_\_\_

	English Word	Mythological Figure or Place	English Meaning
1.	_____	_____	_____
2.	_____	_____	_____
3.	_____	_____	_____
4.	_____	_____	_____
5.	_____	_____	_____
6.	_____	_____	_____
7.	_____	_____	_____
8.	_____	_____	_____

**B. Answer each question or fill in the blank with the literal meaning of the italicized word or part of a word. If you are unsure of the meaning of a word, check your unabridged dictionary.**

1. What do *Janus* and a *janitor* have in common? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Why did the bodybuilder who called himself Charles *Atlas* choose that name?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. A *martial* spirit is useful in times of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I thought I had gotten away with the crime, but the policeman proved to be my \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The ancient Romans believed that the eruptions of fire and lava from Mt.Vesuvius were caused by the god \_\_\_\_\_.What was he doing there? \_\_\_\_\_
6. When the emperor Augustus was *deified*, the Roman senate decreed that he had been \_\_\_\_\_ into a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. "It's been eons since I saw you," he cried.He was exaggerating, but it really had been \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If you put off to tomorrow what you should do today, you are \_\_\_\_\_.
9. *Ephemeral* ideas last \_\_\_\_\_.
10. What do the abbreviations *a.m.* and *p.m.* represent?
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I was terrified because the \_\_\_\_\_ darkness made it impossible to know where I was.
12. The *labyrinthine* structure of the building confused me. I felt as if I were lost in \_\_\_\_\_.
13. What is the chief symptom of *lethargy*? \_\_\_\_\_
14. My mother said my room was so dirty that it reminded her of the \_\_\_\_\_, so I began the *Sisyphean* task of cleaning it even though I knew my efforts would be \_\_\_\_\_.
15. My secretary sits outside my office like a \_\_\_\_\_, always guarding and protecting me from unwanted visitors.
16. I was tormented by the \_\_\_\_\_ aroma the coming from the bakery, but unfortunately, I was on a diet. Like a \_\_\_\_\_ the chocolate cake called out, "Eat me," but I resisted.
17. After the movie flopped, everyone said the actor's career had gone up in flames, but the following year, like the \_\_\_\_\_, he rose from the ashes.
18. Many politicians have a \_\_\_\_\_ ability to change positions on almost any issue.
19. He warned her not to ask those questions for it would only open up a \_\_\_\_\_ that would cause her great unhappiness.
20. Everywhere he went he was surrounded by his \_\_\_\_\_, who would do anything he wanted.
21. His *hectoring* tones revealed his \_\_\_\_\_ personality.
22. A person who gives wise advice and counsel may be called a \_\_\_\_\_.

23. To speak in *stentorian* tones is to talk \_\_\_\_\_.
24. A faithful wife may be described as resembling \_\_\_\_\_.
25. His constant predictions of impending disaster turned him into a \_\_\_\_\_ whom no one believed.
26. His \_\_\_\_\_ around the world to find happiness led him on a long and wandering journey.
27. His luxurious lifestyle and self-indulgent behavior were indicative of his \_\_\_\_\_ temperament. His brother, however, lived in \_\_\_\_\_ surroundings, getting by with little beyond the necessities.
28. Calvin Coolidge, the thirtieth president of the United States (1923–1928), was nicknamed “Silent Cal” because he was a man of few words. The adjective we might use to describe him is \_\_\_\_\_.
29. The painting depicted an \_\_\_\_\_ landscape of unspoiled beauty and simplicity.
30. *I should of went* is an example of a \_\_\_\_\_.
31. When the critic described the millionaire’s new home as a *mausoleum*, he meant that it resembled a \_\_\_\_\_.
32. A battle that is won at too great a cost is called a \_\_\_\_\_.
33. Cutting off a thief’s hand for stealing a loaf of bread is a \_\_\_\_\_ punishment.
34. When sitting in the dentist’s chair, what is the best philosophical attitude to adopt?  
\_\_\_\_\_
35. A *hedonist* lives only for \_\_\_\_\_.
36. She told him, “Let’s just be friends,” but since he wanted to get married, he was not at all interested in a \_\_\_\_\_ relationship with her.
37. He indulged his \_\_\_\_\_ tastes by ordering the best food and wine on the menu.
38. Her \_\_\_\_\_ attitude made it impossible for her to believe that anyone sincerely acted on moral principle.
39. We formed an \_\_\_\_\_ committee to deal only with that particular problem.
40. *Contemplation* should take place in a \_\_\_\_\_. What is the current English usage of this word? \_\_\_\_\_

41. The account of his life read like a *hagiography* since it concealed all his faults and portrayed him as a \_\_\_\_\_.
42. The *Apostles* were \_\_\_\_\_ to preach the Christian Gospel.
43. The ancient Egyptian system of writing is called *hieroglyphs* because it was once believed that they were \_\_\_\_\_ carvings.
44. A *dogmatic* individual wants to impose his own \_\_\_\_\_ on others.
45. *Angels* are the \_\_\_\_\_ of God.
46. The original meaning of *hierarchy* concerned the \_\_\_\_\_. What is its current English usage? \_\_\_\_\_
47. According to its root, *moral* behavior should be determined by \_\_\_\_\_.
48. As his thoughts *meandered*, his attention \_\_\_\_\_ from the professor's lecture.

LINGUA LATINA  
ETIAM VIVIT  
*(The Latin Language Still Lives!)*



Bathing beauty, fourth century CE. Piazza Amerina, Sicily.

*Moth: They have been at a great feast of languages,  
and stolen the scraps.*

*Costard: O, they have lived long on the alms-basket of words.*

*I marvel thy master hath not eaten thee for a word;  
for thou art not so long by the head as  
honorificabilitudinitatibus: thou art easier swallowed than a flap-dragon.*

—WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE, *Love's Labour's Lost*

We have already seen how vibrant and powerful a force Latin has been in the shaping of English vocabulary; and although Latin is no longer a spoken language, there are many phrases and expressions used in English that still appear in their Latin form. You can amaze (or confuse) your friends when you use these phrases.

Latin Proverbs

<i>Latin Phrase</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>Cum grano salis.</i>	With a grain of salt.
<i>De gustibus non est disputandum.</i>	About tastes, it ought not to be argued.
<i>De mortuis nil nisi bonum.</i>	About the dead, (say) nothing except good things.
<i>Deo volente.</i>	God willing.
<i>Errare humanum est.</i>	To err is human.
<i>Nihil sub sole novum.</i>	(There's) nothing new under the sun.
<i>Vita brevis, ars longa.</i>	Life is short, art is long.

Measurements of Time

<i>Latin Phrase or Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>ab ovo</i>	from the egg (from the beginning)
<i>in principio</i>	in the beginning
<i>ante bellum</i>	before the war
<i>post bellum</i>	after the war
<i>anno domini</i>	in the year of (our) Lord
<i>status quo</i>	the state in which (the existing state of affairs)
<i>pro tempore</i>	for the time (being)
<i>terminus ante quem</i>	end before which
<i>terminus post quem</i>	end after which
<i>ad infinitum</i>	to infinity (with no end)
<i>per diem</i>	by the day
<i>carpe diem</i>	seize the day! (enjoy the moment!)
<i>tempus fugit</i>	time flies
<i>fnis</i>	the end

## Measures and Relationships

<i>Latin Phrase or Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>in toto</i>	in the whole (completely)
<i>per se</i>	by itself (intrinsically)
<i>quid pro quo</i>	something for something (one thing in return for another)
<i>ne plus ultra</i>	not more beyond (the highest point)
<i>ex parte</i>	out of the part (on one side only)
<i>passim</i>	here and there
<i>per capita</i>	by heads (by individuals)
<i>ex post facto</i>	from a thing done after (subsequently)
<i>ad nauseam</i>	to the point of disgust

## Speech and Language

<i>Latin Phrase or Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>ipse dixit</i>	he himself said
<i>lapsus linguae</i>	slip of the tongue
<i>lingua franca</i>	the Frankish tongue (the commonly spoken language)
<i>mirabile dictu</i>	wonderful to tell
<i>non sequitur</i>	it does not follow (an illogical conclusion)
<i>verbatim</i>	word for word
<i>viva voce</i>	with living voice (orally)
<i>vox populi</i>	voice of the people

## Drama and Theater

<i>Latin Phrase or Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>dramatis personae</i>	the masks (characters) of a drama
<i>deus ex machina</i>	the god from the machine (an improbable solution)
<i>in medias res</i>	in the middle of things
<i>exit</i>	he, she, or it goes out (he, she, or it goes offstage)
<i>exeunt</i>	they go out (they go offstage)
<i>exeunt omnes</i>	they all go out (they all go offstage)



## PEOPLE, PLACES, AND THINGS

<i>Latin Phrase or Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>alma mater</i>	nourishing mother
<i>alter ego</i>	another I
<i>alumna</i>	foster daughter (female graduate)
<i>alumnus</i>	foster son (male graduate)
<i>desideratum</i>	something wanted or needed
<i>in absentia</i>	in the absence of
<i>in situ</i>	in place
<i>inter alia</i>	among other things
<i>inter alios</i>	among other people
<i>magnum opus</i>	great work
<i>mea culpa</i>	my fault
<i>modus operandi</i>	way of operating
<i>modus vivendi</i>	way of living
<i>persona non grata</i>	a person not pleasing (a person not welcome)
<i>quidnunc</i>	What now? (a gossip, a busybody)
<i>rara avis</i>	rare bird (a rare person, one of a kind)
<i>sine qua non</i>	without which not (something essential or indispensable)
<i>sub rosa</i>	under the rose <sup>1</sup> (secretly)
<i>sui generis</i>	of its own kind (unique)
<i>summum bonum</i>	the highest good
<i>tabula rasa</i>	blank slate
<i>terra firma</i>	solid earth
<i>terra incognita</i>	unknown land
<i>vade mecum</i>	walk with me (guidebook, manual)

---

1. In Roman myth, the god Cupid gave a rose to Harpocrates, the god of silence and secrets, in order to keep him from revealing the various indiscretions of Venus, the goddess of love.

## LATIN ABBREVIATIONS AND WORDS USED IN SCHOLARLY RESEARCH AND WRITING

<i>Latin Abbreviation or Word</i>	<i>English Meaning</i>
<i>c. or ca.</i> (circa)	around (a particular date)
<i>cf.</i> (confer)	compare
<i>ed. cit.</i> (editio citata)	the edition cited
<i>e.g.</i> (exempli gratia)	for (the sake of) an example
<i>et al.</i> (et alii or et alia)	and others (men); and others [things]
<i>etc.</i> (et cetera)	and the rest
<i>et seq.</i> (et sequens or et sequentia)	and following (sing.); and following (pl.)
<i>fl.</i> (floruit)	he or she flourished (the period during which a historical person lived or worked when the exact birth and death dates are not known)
<i>ibid.</i> (ibidem)	in the same place
<i>i.e.</i> (id est)	that is
<i>loc. cit.</i> (loco citato)	in the place cited
<i>n.b.</i> or <i>N.B.</i> (nota bene)	note well
<i>op. cit.</i> (opera citato)	in the work cited
<i>QED</i> (quod erat demonstrandum)	that which was to be proved
<i>seriatim</i>	in a series
<i>sic</i>	thus (to indicate that a quoted passage, often containing some error, is precisely reproduced)
<i>stet</i>	let it stand
<i>viz.</i> (videlicet)	namely, in other words





## 17: EXERCISES

### A. Find the Latin phrase that best completes the meaning of the sentence.

1. He lies all the time, so I would take anything he says \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Everyone makes mistakes; after all, \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I love sushi but my husband hates raw fish. I always tell him, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He was a terrible person, but now that he has died, remember: \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Instead of having a permanent chairperson, someone was chosen at each session to run the meeting as chairperson \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The agreement was made \_\_\_\_\_ and the details were confidential.
7. He said that I would get paid by the day, but I did not take the job since the \_\_\_\_\_ rate was too low.
8. Since life is short, enjoy yourself! \_\_\_\_\_, as the Romans used to say.
9. The years flew by, and only now do I realize \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I gave you this; you gave me that. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ agreement.
11. He repeated his argument without stopping until I was disgusted. What are the phrases that can be used to describe his behavior and my response? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. I didn't mean to say that; it was a \_\_\_\_\_.
13. He called himself the \_\_\_\_\_, but the only voice you could hear was his.
14. I can't begin to say how remarkable it was, but \_\_\_\_\_, I passed the exam.
15. Nothing he said made any sense. I couldn't understand his arguments since they were filled with \_\_\_\_\_.
16. The situation was awful. The only thing that could save us was a \_\_\_\_\_.

17. Since the stage directions read *exeunt omnes*, \_\_\_\_\_ the actors \_\_\_\_\_.
18. “*Mea culpa*,” he said. “It really is \_\_\_\_\_.”
19. Some believe an infant’s mind is a \_\_\_\_\_ on which anything can be written.
20. I behaved so badly that I knew that he would never invite me again. I had become \_\_\_\_\_.
21. There is no one like him. He is truly a \_\_\_\_\_.
22. I wandered around for hours after I got off at the wrong subway stop. I didn’t recognize anyone or anything. I was in \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Since the defendant was not to be located, he was tried \_\_\_\_\_.
24. My friend is just like me in every way. He is my \_\_\_\_\_.
25. I hate flying and so I was glad to put my feet on \_\_\_\_\_.
26. I don’t know the exact date it happened but it was \_\_\_\_\_ 1950.
27. Although the police did not know the identity of the bank robber, they had figured out his \_\_\_\_\_ since the criminal always acted in the same way.
28. I photographed the object \_\_\_\_\_ so that its exact location could be recorded.
29. I will always look back with fondness on my college years since my \_\_\_\_\_ nourished me in many ways.
30. The action of the story began \_\_\_\_\_. Only later did the reader find out what had happened before.
31. His way of life was not to my liking, but I realized that we all find our own \_\_\_\_\_.
32. The newspaper carried a \_\_\_\_\_ report of his speech, publishing every word.
33. After the Civil War, the South looked back on its \_\_\_\_\_ history.
34. I always write the words of the ancient Roman gladiators on the top of my exam paper: \_\_\_\_\_.

**B. Fill in the blank with an abbreviated Latin phrase.**

35. There are many activities I love in the summer, \_\_\_\_\_, swimming, hiking, and sleeping in the hammock.
36. It is impossible to determine the exact date of the beginning of the Industrial Revolution so most historians simply write, “\_\_\_\_\_ 1760.”
37. He never finished telling a story. He would begin, and then say, “\_\_\_\_\_.”
38. Frank, Mary, Susan, Joe, Harry \_\_\_\_\_ all came to the party.
39. He was a sesquipedalian, \_\_\_\_\_, he used very long words.



# GREEK VOCABULARY

## Notes

1. If the stem of a noun is used to form a learned borrowing in English, the genitive case of the Greek noun is given.
2. Check chapter 5 for the rules for transliterating Greek words.

### A, α, ἄ (A) alpha

a- (α'-) = lack of

acron (ἄκρον) = topmost

adelphe (ἀδελφή) = sister

adelphos (ἀδελφός) = brother

aden (ἀδὴν) = gland

aegis (αἰγίς) = shield

aeon (αἰών) = age, a long time

aer (ἀήρ) = air

hagion (ἅγιον) = sacred, holy

ago (ἄγω) = do, drive

agon (ἄγων) = contest

agora (ἄγορά) = marketplace

aether (αἰθήρ) = heaven, sky

hema, hematos (αἷμα) = blood

heresis (ἄιρεσις) = choice

aesthesia (αἰσθησις) = perception

etia (αἰτία) = cause, reason

algos (ἄλγος) = pain

ameba (ἀμοιβή) = change

amphi (ἀμφί) = around, on both sides

ana (ἀνά) = up, backward, again

ancyra (ἄγκυρα) = anchor

anemos (ἄνεμος) = wind

aner, andros (ἀνὴρ) = man, husband

angelos (ἄγγελος) = messenger

anthos (ἄνθος) = flower

anthropos (ἄνθρωπος) = man

anti (ἀντί) = against

apo (ἀπό) = from, away from

apologia (ἀπολογία) = defense

apostello (ἀποστέλλω) = send away

apostrophe (ἀποστροφή) = turning  
back

arachne (ἀράχνη) = spider

arche (ἀρχή) = rule, beginning

archeon (ἀρχαῖον) = old

archon (ἄρχων) = ruler, chief

arctos (ἄρκτος) = bear

argyron (ἄργυρον) = silver, money

ariston (ἄριστον) = best

arithmos (ἀριθμός) = number

harmonia (ἁρμονία) = joining together

arteria (ἀρτηρία) = windpipe, artery

aster (αστήρ) = star

astron (ἄστρον) = star



athlos (ἄθλος) = contest  
 atmos (ἄτμος) = vapor  
 atomon (ἄτομον) = uncut  
 auto (αὐτό) = self  
 axioma (ἄξιωμα) = theorem

### B, β (B) beta

bacterion (βακτήριον) = rod, staff  
 barbaron (βάρβαρον) = foreign  
 baros (βαρός) = weight  
 basileus (βασιλεύς) = king  
 biblion (βιβλίον) = book  
 biblos (βίβλος) = book  
 bios (βίος) = life  
 botane (βοτάνη) = herb, grass  
 bous (βοῦς) = cow  
 brachy (βραχύ) = short  
 brady (βραδύ) = slow  
 bronchos (βρόγχος) = windpipe, throat  
 bronte (βροντή) = thunder

### Γ, γ (G) gamma

gala, galactos (γάλα) = milk  
 gamete (γαμετή) = wife  
 gametes (γαμετής) = husband  
 gamos (γάμος) = marriage  
 gaster, gastros (γαστήρ) = stomach  
 ge (γῆ) = earth  
 genea (γενέα) = family  
 genos (γένος) = race, family  
 geron (γέρων) = old man  
 geusis (γεῦσις) = taste  
 gigas, gigantos (γίγας) = mighty  
 glossa or glotta (γλωσσά) = tongue  
 glycy (γλυκύ) = sweet  
 gnosis (γνώσις) = knowledge  
 gone (γονή) = offspring  
 gonia (γωνία) = angle  
 gony (γόνυ) = knee

gramma (γράμμα) = letter  
 grapho (γράφω) = write  
 gymnazo (γυμνάζω) = exercise  
 gyne, gynecos (γυνή) = woman

### Δ, δ (D) delta

daphne (δάφνη) = laurel  
 deca (δέκα) = ten  
 decaton (δέκατον) = tenth  
 demos (δῆμος) = the people  
 dendron (δένδρον) = tree  
 derma, dermatos (δέρμα) = skin  
 despotes (δεσπότης) = master, lord  
 deuteron (δεύτερον) = second  
 dia (διά) = through, on account of  
 diaphragma (διάφραγμα) = partition,  
 fence  
 diatribe (διατριβή) = way of spending  
 time, criticism  
 didacton (διδασκόν) = taught  
 (adjective)  
 dieta (δίαιτα) = way of life  
 dinon (δεινόν) = terrible  
 diocesis (διοίκησις) = government  
 dis (δίζ) = twice  
 discos (δίσκος) = plate  
 dogma (δόγμα) = teaching, decree  
 dracon (δράκων) = snake, dragon  
 drama (δράμα) = deed, act, drama  
 dromos (δρόμος) = running  
 drys, dryos (δρῦς) = oak tree  
 dynamis (δύναμις) = power, force  
 dyo (δύο) = two  
 dys- (δυσ-) bad, difficult

### E, ε (E) epsilon

hebdomon (ἑβδομον) = seventh  
 ec, ex (ἐκ) = out of  
 hecaton (ἑκατόν) = one hundred

icon (εἰκών) = image, likeness  
 embryo (ἐμβρυον) = young  
 emphasis (ἐμφασις) = impression,  
     meaning  
 empiro (ἐμπειρον) = experienced  
 emporion (ἐμπορίον) = market  
 en (ἐν) = in  
 hen (ἓν) = one  
 enaton (ἐννατον) = ninth  
 encephalos (ἐγκέφαλος) = brain  
 encomion (ἐγκώμιον) = song of praise  
 encyclion (ἐγκυκλιον) = encircling  
 endon (ἐνδον) = within  
 ennea (ἐννέα) = nine  
 enteron (ἐντερον) = inside, gut  
 entomon (ἐντομον) = notched  
 epi (ἐπί) = on, upon, in addition to  
 episcopos (ἐπίσκοπος) = overseer,  
     guardian  
 episteme (ἐπιστήμη) = knowledge  
 hepta (ἐπτά) = seven  
 ergon (ἔργον) = work  
 eros (ἔρως) = love, desire  
 herpo (ἔρπω) = creep, crawl  
 erythron (ἐρυθρόν) = red  
 heteron (ἕτερον) = other  
 ethnos (ἔθνος) = nation, tribe  
 eu (εὖ) = well  
 eulogia (εὐλογία) = blessing  
 hex (ἕξ) = six

## Z, ζ (Z) zeta

zoon (ζῶον) = living thing

## H, η (A, E) eta

hedone (ἡδονή) = pleasure  
 electron (ἤλεκτρον) = amber  
 helios (ἥλιος) = sun  
 helix (ἥλιξ) = spiral

hemera (ἡμέρα) = day  
 hemi (ἡμι-) = half  
 hepar, hepatos (ἥπαρ) = liver  
 ethos (ἦθος) = custom, behavior

## Θ, θ (TH) theta

thanatos (θάνατος) = death  
 thea (θέα) = god (female)  
 theatron (θέατρον) = place of seeing  
 theoria (θεωρία) = spectacle,  
     contemplation  
 theos (θεός) = god (male)  
 therapia (θεραπεία) = service  
 thermon (θερμόν) = warm  
 thesauros (θησαυρός) = treasure  
 thrix, trichos (θρίξ) = hair  
 thronos (θρόνος) = seat, chair

## I, ι (I) iota

iatros (ἰατρός) = physician  
 ichthys (ἰχθύς) = fish  
 idea (ἰδέα) = form, class, kind  
 idion (ἴδιον) = one's own  
 idiotēs (ἰδιώτης) = private citizen  
 hieron (ἱερόν) = holy, sacred  
 ion (ἶον) = going  
 hippos (ἵππος) = horse  
 ison (ἴσον) = equal  
 historia (ἱστορία) = inquiry

## K, κ (K, C) kappa

cacon (κακόν) = bad  
 canon (κανών) = rule, standard  
 cardia (καρδιά) = heart  
 cata, cath- (κατα, καθ-) = down,  
     against, according to  
 catharsis (κάθαρσις) = cleansing,  
     purification  
 cephalē (κεφαλή) = head

ceramia (κεραμεία) = pottery  
 kineo (κινέω) = move  
 kinesis (κίνησις) = movement  
 cithara (κιθάρα) = lyre, lute  
 klepto (κλέπτω) = steal  
 clima, climatos (κλίμα) = zone, region  
 cline (κλίνη) = bed, couch  
 clon (κλών) = twig  
 colon (κόλον) = colon  
 colon (κῶλον) = member  
 coma (κῶμα) = deep sleep  
 comma (κόμμα) = that which is cut off  
 comedia (κομωδία) = comedy  
 comos (κῶμος) = merry-making  
 cosmos (κόσμος) = order  
 cratos (κράτος) = strength, rule  
 crisis (κρίσις) = trial, decision  
 crypton (κρυπτόν) = hidden  
 cyanon (κύανον) = blue  
 cybernetes (κυβερνήτης) = governor,  
 pilot  
 cyclos (κύκλος) = circle  
 cyon, cynos (κύον) = dog  
 cytos (κύτος) = hollow, vessel

### Λ, λ (L) lambda

leon (λέων) = lion  
 lethargon (λήθαργον) = forgetful  
 lepton (λεπτόν) = slender  
 leucon (λευκόν) = white  
 limne (λίμνη) = lake  
 lithos (λίθος) = stone  
 logos (λόγος) = word, thought, study  
 lysis (λύσις) = loosening, untying

### Μ, μ (M) mu

macron (μακρόν) = large  
 malacon (μαλακόν) = soft

mania (μανία) = madness  
 martyrs, martyros (μάρτυς) = witness  
 mater (μήτηρ) = mother  
 mathesis (μάθησις) = learning  
 mechane (μηχανή) = device, machine  
 mega, megalos (μεγά) = very large  
 melan, melanos (μελόν) = black  
 melodia (μελωδία) = song  
 meson (μέσον) = middle  
 meta (μετά) or meth' (μεθ') = with,  
 after, beyond, change  
 metabole (μεταβολή) = change  
 meteoron (μετέωρον) = thing raised in  
 the air  
 methodos (μέθοδος) = pursuit,  
 scientific inquiry  
 methy (μέθυ) = wine  
 metron (μέτρον) = measure  
 miasma (μίασμα) = stain, pollution  
 micron (μικρόν) = small  
 mimesis (μίμησις) = representation,  
 imitation  
 miseo (μισέω) = hate  
 mneme (μνήμη) = memory  
 monon (μόνον) = single, only  
 moron (μῶρον) = fool  
 morphe (μορφή) = shape, form  
 musice (μυσική) = art of the Muses  
 myrias, myriados (μυρίας) = ten  
 thousand  
 mys, myos (μῦς) = mouse  
 mythos (μῦθος) = story

### Ν, ν (N) nu

necros (νεκρός) = corpse  
 neon (νέον) = new  
 nephros (νεφρός) = kidney  
 neuron (νεῦρον) = nerve

nomicon (νομικόν) = of the law

nomos (νόμος) = law, custom

nymphē (νύμφη) = maiden

### Ξ, ξ (X) xi

xenos (ξένος) = stranger, foreigner

xeron (ξηρόν) = dry

xylon (ξύλον) = wood

### Ο, ο (O) omicron

octo (ὀκτώ) = eight

ecos (οἶκος) = house, household

ecumene (οἰκουμένη) = inhabited world

hodos (ὁδός) = road

odous, odontos (ὀδους) = tooth

odyne (ὀδύνη) = pain

oligoι (ὀλίγοι) = few

homeon (ὁμοῖον) = similar

homon (ὁμόν) = same

onyma (ὄνυμα) = name

ophthalmos (ὀφθαλμός) = eye

opsis (ὄψις) = sight

opteuo (ὀπτεύω) = see, look at

orchestra (ὀρχήστρα) = dancing stage

orexis (ὄρεξις) = appetite

organon (ὄργανον) = instrument, tool,  
bodily organ

hormao (ὀρμάω) = excite, stimulate

ornis, ornithos (ὄρνις) = bird

oros, oreos (ὄρος) = mountain

orthon (ὀρθόν) = straight

osteon (ὀστέον) = bone

ostrakon (ὄστρακον) = tile

ous, otos (ὄυς) = ear

### Π, π (P) pi

pachy (παχύ) = thick

paean (παιόν) = song of thanksgiving  
to Apollo, the god of healing

paleon (παλαιόν) = old

pan, pantos (πάν) = all

papyros (πάπυρος) = papyrus plant

para (παρά) = beside, beyond, contrary  
to, irregular

parabole (παραβολή) = comparison,  
analogy

paradigma (παράδειγμα) = pattern,  
model

paragraphe (παραγραφή) = anything  
written down beside

parenthesis (παρένθεσις) = an insertion

pascho (πάσχω) = suffer, endure

pater (πατήρ) = father

pathos (πάθος) = suffering, condition

pente (πέντε) = five

peri (περί) = around, about, near

periodos (περίοδος) = going around

pedia (παιδεία) = education

pepto (πέπτω) = soften, cook

pes, pedos (παῖς) = child

petros (πέτρος) = stone

pithecos (πίθηκος) = ape

planetes (πλανήτης) = wanderer, planet

plasticon (πλαστικόν) = molded

platy (πλατύ) = broad, wide

plege (πληγή) = blow

plethora (πληθώρα) = fullness

pleura (πλευρά) = side, rib

pneo (πνέω) = breathe

pneumon (πνευμών) = lung

poetes (ποιητής) = maker, poet

polemos (πόλεμος) = war

polis (πόλις) = city-state

poly (πολύ) = many, much, very

potamos (ποταμός) = river

pous, podos (πούς) = foot

pragma, pragmatos (πράγμα) =  
business, matter

praxis (πραξις) = transaction, doing  
 presbys (πρέσβυς) = old  
 pro (πρό) = before, in front of  
 pros (πρός) = to, toward, in addition to  
 proton (πρώτον) = first  
 pteron (πτερόν) = wing  
 pyr, pyros (πῦρ) = fire

### P, ρ (Rh) rho

rheo (ρέω) = flow  
 rhetor (ρήτωρ) = speaker  
 rhis, rhinos (ρίς) = nose  
 rhythmos (ρυθμός) = arrangement,  
 order

### Σ, σ, ς (S) sigma

sacchar (σάκχαρ) = sugar  
 sarx, sarcos (σάρξ) = flesh  
 sauros (σαῦρος) = lizard  
 scene (σκηνή) = tent, stage backdrop  
 schema (σχῆμα) = form, shape  
 schole (σχολή) = leisure  
 scleron (σκλήρον) = hard  
 scopeo (σκοπέω) = look at  
 sideros (σίδηρος) = iron  
 skeleton (σκελετόν) = dried up  
 soma, somatos (σῶμα) = body  
 sophia (σοφία) = wisdom  
 sophistes (σοφιστής) = expert, teacher  
 sperma (σπέρμα) = seed  
 sphaera (σφαῖρα) = ball  
 sphongos (σφόνγγος) = sponge  
 stadion (στάδιον) = racecourse  
 stereon (στερεόν) = solid, firm  
 sthenos (σθένος) = strength  
 stoa (στοά) = colonnade  
 stoma, stomatos (στόμα) = mouth  
 strategos (στράτηγος) = general

symbolon (σύμβολον) = sign, mark  
 symposion (συμπόσιον) = drinking  
 party  
 syn (σύν) or sym- (συμ-) = with  
 synthesis (σύνθεσις) = putting together  
 systema (σύστημα) = whole  
 composition

### T, τ (T) tau

tachy (ταχύ) = rapid, swift  
 tauros (ταῦρος) = bull  
 techne (τέχνη) = skill, art  
 tele (τῆλε) = at a distance  
 tithemi (τίθημι) = put, place  
 tomon (τομόν) = cutting  
 topos (τόπος) = place  
 trachy (τραχύ) = rough  
 tragoedia (τραγωδία) = tragedy  
 trapeza (τράπεζα) = table  
 trauma, traumatos (τραῦμα) = wound  
 tris (τρεῖς) = three  
 tropos (τρόπος) = turn, way, manner  
 trophe (τροφή) = nourishment  
 tympanon (τύμπανον) = drum  
 typos (τύπος) = mark, model, outline  
 tyrannos (τύραννος) = absolute ruler

### Υ, υ (U) upsilon

hybris (ὑβρις) = pride, arrogance  
 hydor, hydatos (ὑδωρ); in compounds,  
 hydro- = water  
 hygiea (ὑγίεια) = health  
 hygron (ὑγρόν) = moisture  
 hyle (ὕλη) = material  
 hymnos (ὕμνος) = song of praise  
 hyper (ὑπέρ) = above, excessive  
 hyphen (ὑφέν) = in one  
 hypnos (ὕπνος) = sleep

hypo (ὑπό) or hyp- (υφ-) = below,  
deficient

hypocrites (ὑποκριτής) = actor

hystera (ὑστέρα) = uterus

### Φ, φ (F, PH) phi

phagein (φαγεῖν) = eat

phalanx (φάλαγξ) = phalanx

pharmacon (φάρμακον) = drug, poison

pharynx (φάρυγξ) = throat

pheno (φαίνω) = seem, appear, shine  
(learned borrowing = shining)

phenomenon (φαινόμενον) = a thing  
come to light

phero (φέρω) = bear, carry

philia (φιλία) = love

phlegma (φλέγμα) = phlegm

phleps, phlebos (φλέψ) = vein

phobos (φόβος) = fear

phone (φωνή) = sound

phos, photos (φῶς) = light

phren (φρήν) = midriff

phyllon (φύλλον) = leaf

physis (φύσις) = nature

### X, χ (CH) chi

chalcos (χαλκός) = copper

chaos (χάος) = void

character (χαρακτήρ) = mark

charisma (χάρισμα) = grace

chartes (χάρτης) = papyrus roll

chemia (χημεία) = alloying

chilioi (χίλιοι) = one thousand

chir (χεῖρ) = hand

chloros (χλωρός) = green

chole (χολή) = bile

choreuo (χορεύω) = dance in a circle

christos (χριστός) = anointed

chroma (χρῶμα) = color

chronos (χρόνος) = time

chrysos (χρυσός) = gold

### Ψ, ψ (PS) psi

pseudon (ψεῦδον) = false

psyche (ψυχή) = soul

### Ω, ω (O) omega

Oceanos (Ωκεανός) = ocean, the great  
river believed to encircle the earth

on,ontos (ὢν) = being



# LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

ab, a = from, away from  
abdomen, abdominis = stomach  
abhorreo-abhorrēre = shrink back  
acer, acris = sharp  
ad = to, toward  
adolesco-adolescere-adultum = grow up  
aedes, aedis = room  
aedificium, aedificii = building  
aequum, aequi = equal  
aer, aeris = air  
aestas, aestatis = summer  
aevum, aevi = age, period of time  
ager, agri = field  
agro- (learned borrowing) =  
concerning earth, soil  
ago-agere-actum = do, drive  
alacre, alacris = sharp  
album, albi = white  
alias = at another time  
alibi = in another place  
alo-alere-altum = nourish  
ambitio, ambitionis = going around  
ambo = both  
amica, amicae = (female) friend  
amicus, amici = (male) friend  
amo-amare-amatum = love (v)  
amor, amoris = love (n)  
anima, animae = breath, soul  
animal, animalis = living being

animus, animi = spirit, courage, hostile  
intent  
annus, anni = year  
ante = before  
apis = bee  
aqua, aquae = water  
arbitror-arbitrari-arbitratum = think  
ardeo-audēre-arsum = burn  
arena, arenae = sand  
argentum, argenti = silver  
ars, artis = art, skill  
astrum, atri = star  
atrium, atrii = entry hall  
audio-audēre = dare  
audio-audire-auditum = hear  
augeo-augēre-auctum = increase  
augur, auguris = seer, prophet  
auris, auris = ear  
aurum, auri = gold  
auspex, auspiciis = diviner  
autumnus, autumni = fall  
auxilium, auxilii = aid  
avarum, avari = greedy  
aveo-avēre = be well  
avis = bird

## B

bacillus, bacilli = little staff  
baculum, baculi = staff, walking stick  
bellum, belli = war



bene = well

bilis, bilis = bile

bis = twice

bonum, boni = good

breve, brevis = short

## C

cado-cadere-casum = fall

caedo-caedere-caesum = cut, kill

caeruleum, caerulei = blue

calculus, calculi = pebble

calor, calor = warmth, heat

camera, camerae = chamber, room

campus, campi = field

candeo-candēre = shine

candescio-candescere = begin to shine

candor, candoris = dazzling white,  
sincerity

canis, canis = dog

canto-cantare-cantatum = sing

capio-capere-captum = take

caput, capitis = head

caro, carnis = flesh

castum, casti = pure

cedo-cedere-cessum = yield, go

cella, cellae = small room

censeo-censēre-censum = assess

ensor, censoris = censor

centum = one hundred

cerebrum, cerebri = brain

charta, chartae = map

cilium, cili = eyelash

circa = around (approximately)

circum = around (distance)

civis, civis = citizen

civitas, civitatis = state

clamo-clamare-clamatum = shout

clarum, clari = clear, bright

claudio-claudere-clausum = close

clavus, clavi = key

clemens, clementis = mild, gentle

coalesce-coalescere-coalitum = grow  
together, become one

codex, codicis = book

cohors, cohortis = enclosure

collegium, collegii = corporation, group

collum, colli = neck

colo-colere-cultum = cultivate, till

colonia, coloniae = estate, settlement

color, coloris = color

commune, communis = common

computo-computare-computatum =  
sum up, calculate

congregior-congredi-congressum =  
meet

consul, consulis = consul

contagio, contagionis = touching

contra = against

copia, copiae = abundance, supply

cornū, cornūs = horn

corona, coronae = crown

corpus, corporis = body

cors, cordis = heart

costa, costae = rib

cras = tomorrow

credo-credere-creditum = believe

creo-creare-creatum = bring forth

cresco-crescere-cretum = arise

crimen, criminis = crime

cubo-cubare-cubitum = lie down

culpa, culpa = fault, blame

cum = with

cumulus, cumuli = pile, heap

cupido, cupidinis = desire

cuprum, cupri = copper

cura, curae = care

curro-currere-cursum = run

custos, custodis = guard

cutis, cutis = skin

## D

de = from, about, concerning

dea, deae = god (female)

debeo-debēre-debitum = owe, ought

decus, decoris = honor, ornament

deforme, deformis = ugly

deleo-delēre-deletum = destroy

delinquo-delinquere-delictum = fail

dens, dentis = tooth

despicio-despicere-despectum = look  
down on

deus, dei = god

dexterum, dexteri = right

dico-dicere-dictum = say, speak

dies, diei = day

digero-digerere-digestum = carry away

digitus, digiti = finger, toe

dignitas, dignitatis = worth, merit

dis- = apart

disciplina, disciplinae = instruction

disco-discere = learn

divido-dividere-divisum = separate

divortium, divortii = divorce

divum, divi = divine

do-dare-datum = give

doceo-docēre-doctum = teach, show

doctrina, doctrinae = teaching

dominor-dominari-dominatum = rule

dominus, domini = master

domus, domūs = house

dormio-dormire-dormitum = sleep

duco-ducere-ductum = lead

## E

edo-edere-esum = eat

edo-edere-editum = bring forth

educo-educare-educatum = bring up,  
rear, educate

effervesco-effervescere = boil up, foam

ego, mei = I

eques, equitis = horseman, knight

equus, equi = horse

erro-errare-erratum = wander

erudio-erudire-eruditum = polish

(sum)-esse-futurum = be, exist

ex, e = out, out of

examino-examinare-examinatum =  
weigh, consider, test

experior-experiri-expertum = try, test

exterum, exteri = outside

extra = outside of

## F

fabula, fabulae = story

facio-facere-factum = make, do

facultas, facultatis = skill

fallo-fallere-falsum = deceive

fama, famae = rumor, reputation

familia, familiae = family

fascis, fascis = stick

fateor-fatēri-fassum = speak

felis, felis = cat

felix, felis = happy

femina, feminae = woman

fenestra, fenestrae = window

fermentum, fermenti = yeast

fero-ferre-latum = bear, carry

ferrum, ferri = iron

ferveo-fervēre = boil

fetus, fetus = offspring

fibula, fibulae = clamp, pin

fides, fidei = faith  
 fiducia, fiduciae = confidence, trust  
 filia, filiae = daughter  
 filius, filii = son  
 finio-finire-finitum = end, finish  
 fiscus, fisci = basket, treasury  
 flecto-flectere-flectum = bend  
 flo-flare-flatum = blow  
 floreo-florēre = bloom, prosper  
 flos, floris = flower  
 flumen, fluminis = river  
 fluo-fluere = flow  
 fodio-fodere-fossum = dig  
 folium, folii = leaf  
 for-fari-fatum = speak  
 forma, formae = shape, beauty  
 formica, formicae = ant  
 forte, fortis = brave, strong  
 fortuna, fortunae = fortune, chance  
 forum, fori = outdoors, forum  
 fossa, fossae = ditch  
 frango-frangere-fractum = break  
 frater, fratris = brother  
 fraus, fraudis = deceit, trick  
 fulmen, fulminis = lightning  
 fundus, fundi = depth, bottom  
 fungor-fungi-functum = perform  
 fungus, fungi = mushroom  
 furor, furoris = rage

**G**

gens, gentis = people, tribe  
 genu, genūs = knee  
 genus, generis = type, kind  
 gero-gerere-gestum = carry, wage  
 glacies, glaciei = ice  
 gladius, gladii = sword  
 glans, glandis = acorn

gnosco-gnoscere-gnotum = come to  
 know  
 gradior-gradigrassum = walk, go  
 gratum, grati = pleasing  
 grave, gravis = heavy  
 grex, gregis = flock  
 gubernator, gubernatoris = pilot

**H**

haereo-haerēre-haesum = stick, cling  
 heres, heredis = heir  
 hiatus, hiatūs = cleft, opening  
 hibernum, hiberni = wintry  
 homo, hominis = man  
 hora, horae = hour  
 horreo-horrēre = shudder at  
 hospes, hospitis = host, guest, stranger  
 hostis, hostis = enemy  
 hybrid, hybridae = mixed breed

**I**

id = it  
 idem = same  
 ignis, ignis = fire  
 ileum, ilei = flank  
 imago, imaginis = image, copy  
 imbecillum, imbecilli = weak  
 imperium, imperii = order, command  
 (n)  
 impero-imperare-imperatum = order,  
 command (v)  
 in = in, on  
 inauguro-inaugurare-inauguratum =  
 take omens, consecrate, dedicate  
 individuum, individui = not separable  
 inertia, inertiae = laziness  
 infamia, infamiae = dishonor,  
 disgrace

ingenium, ingenii = inborn  
 characteristic  
 inimicum, inimici = unfriendly  
 insania, insaniae = madness  
 insectum, insecti = notched, cut  
 insula, insulae = island  
 intellego-intellegero-intellectum =  
 understand, distinguish  
 inter = between  
 intestinum, intestini = inward, internal  
 intra = within  
 iter, itineris = journey, route

**J (I)**

jaceo-jacēre = lie  
 jacio-jacere-jactum = throw, hurl  
 jejunum, jejuni = arid, dry  
 judex, judicis = judge  
 jugulum, juguli = throat  
 jungo-jungere-junctum = join  
 jus, juris = law  
 juvenis, juvenis = youth

**L**

labor-laborari-laboratum = work  
 labor-labi-lapsum = slip  
 lac, lactis = milk  
 lacus, lacūs = lake  
 lapis, lapidis = stone  
 lascivum, lascivi = playful  
 legio, legionis = legion  
 lego-legere-lectum = choose, read  
 lene, lenis = smooth, soft, mild  
 leve, levis = light  
 levo-levare-levatum = lift  
 liber, libri = book  
 librum, liberi = free  
 libero-liberare-liberatum = set free

libertas, libertatis = freedom  
 libido, libidinis = desire, longing  
 ligo-ligare-ligatum = tie, bind  
 limen, liminis = threshold  
 lingua, linguae = tongue, language  
 liquor-liqui = melt, flow  
 littera, litterae = letter, literature (pl.)  
 loquor-loqui-locutum = speak  
 lucrum, lucre = profit, advantage  
 ludo-ludere-lusum = play, mock  
 ludus, ludi = game, sport  
 lumen, luminis = light  
 luna, lunae = moon  
 lux, lucis = light  
 luxuria, luxuriae = excess  
 lymphā, lymphae = water, fluid

**M**

magister, magistri = (male) teacher  
 magistra, magistrae = (female) teacher  
 magnum, magni = large  
 major, majoris = larger  
 malum, mali = bad  
 mando-mandare-mandatum = order  
 manus, manūs = hand  
 mappa, mappae = cloth, napkin  
 mare, maris = sea  
 margo, marginis = edge  
 maritus, mariti = husband  
 mater, matris = mother  
 materia, materiae = substance, matter  
 matrimonium, matrimonii = marriage  
 matrona, matronae = married woman  
 maximum, maximi = greatest, largest  
 medicus, medici = doctor  
 medium, medii = middle, in the open  
 melior, melioris = better  
 memor, memoris = mindful

mendax, mendacis = lying  
 mens, mentis = mind  
 mensis, mensis = month  
 mercor-mercari-mercatum = buy  
 mereor-merēri-meritum = earn, deserve  
 mergo-mergere-mersum = sink, dive  
     into  
 merx, mercis = goods, wares  
 miles, militis = soldier  
 minimum, minimi = least  
 minus, minoris = smaller, less  
 mirror-mirari-miratum = wonder at  
 mitto-mittere-misum = send  
 modus, modi = measure, manner  
 moles, molis = mass  
 moneo-monēre-monitum = warn  
 mons, montis = mountain  
 monumentum, monumenti = memorial,  
     monument  
 mordeo-mordēre-morsum = bite  
 morior-mori-moriturum = die  
 mors, mortis = death  
 mos, moris = custom, character (pl.)  
 moveo-movēre-motum = move  
 multum, multi = much  
 mundus, mundi = world  
 municipium, municipii = town  
 munus, muneris = office, duty, reward  
 murus, muri = wall  
 mus, muris = mouse  
 muto-mutare-mutatum = change

**N**

nascor-nasci-natum = be born  
 nasus, nasi = nose  
 natura, naturae = nature  
 nauta, nautae = sailor  
 navis, navis = ship

nebula, nebulae = cloud  
 negotium, negotii = business  
 nervus, nervi = nerve  
 neutrum, neutri = neither  
 niger, nigri = black  
 nihil = nothing  
 nimbus, nimbi = cloud  
 nomen, nominis = name (b)  
 nomino-nominare-nominatum = name  
     (v)  
 non = not  
 novum, novi = new  
 nox, noctis = night  
 nubo-nubere-nuptum = marry  
 nucleus, nuclei = kernel  
 nullum, nulli = none  
 numerus, numeri = number  
 nuntio-nuntiare-nuntiatum = announce  
 nupta, nuptae = bride  
 nutria-nutrire-nutritum = feed, nourish  
 nux, nucis = nut

**O**

ob = to, against  
 obolesco-obolescere-oblitum = wear  
     out, decay  
 oculus, oculi = eye  
 odium, odii = hatred  
 omen, ominis = sign  
 omne, omnis = all  
 ops, opis = wealth  
 optimum, optimi = best  
 opto-optare-optatum = hope for  
 opus, operis = work  
 ordo, ordinis = rank, order  
 origo, originis = source, beginning  
 orior-oriri-ortum = rise  
 oro-orare-oratum = speak, pray

os, oris = mouth  
 os, ossis = bone  
 otium, otii = leisure

**P**

pagus, pagi = country district  
 pars, partis = part  
 patella, patellae = small pan, kneecap  
 pater, patris = father  
 patior-pati-passum = suffer, endure  
 pauci, paucorum = few  
 pax, pacis = peace  
 pecco, peccare, peccatum = sin  
 peculium, peculii = private property  
 pecunia, pecuniae = money  
 pecus, pecoris = flock, herd  
 pejor, peioris = worse  
 pello-pellere-pulsum = strike  
 pendo-pendere-pensum = hang  
 per = through, during  
 percutio-percutire-percussum = strike,  
     push  
 periculum, periculi = danger  
 persona, personae = mask  
 pes, pedis = foot  
 pessimum, pessimi = worst  
 peto-petere-petitum = seek, strive, ask  
     for  
 pigmentum, pigmenti = color  
 pingo-pingere-pictum = represent, paint  
 pinna, pinnae = feather, wing  
 piscis, piscis = fish  
 plagio-plagiare-plagiatum = steal  
 planum, plani = even, level  
 plaudo-plaudere-plausum = strike, clap  
 plebs, plebis = the common people  
 plico-plicare-plicatum = fold  
 plumbum, plumbi = lead

plus, pluris = more  
 pluvia, pluviae = rain  
 poeta, poetae = poet  
 pono-ponere-positum = put, place  
 pontifex, pontificis = priest  
 populus, populi = people  
 porta, portae = door  
 portentum, portentis = omen, sign  
 post = after  
 postulo-postulare-postulatum =  
     demand, claim  
 potens, potentis = powerful  
 potio, potionis = liquid, drink  
 prae = before (adverb and preposition)  
 praesto = ready, available  
 premo-premere-pressum = press  
 pretium, pretii = price  
 primum, primi = first  
 princeps, principis = chief, leader  
 proficio-proficere-profectum = gain, be  
     of use  
 profiteor-profitēri-professum = declare  
     openly  
 proles, prolis = offspring, descendant  
 proprium, proprii = one's own, fitting  
 pudeo-pudēre-puditum = feel shame  
 puer, pueri = boy, child  
 pugno-pugnare-pugnatum = fight  
 pulchrum, pulchri = beautiful  
 pulmo, pulmonis = lung  
 pungo-pungere-punctum = pierce, bite  
 pupa, pupae = little girl  
 pupus, pupi = little boy  
 puto-putare-putatum = think, consider

**Q**

quaero-quarere-quaesitum = seek, ask  
 quale, qualis = of what sort

quantum, quanti = how much  
 quasi = as if  
 quiesco-quiescere-quietum = rest  
 quot = how many

**R**

radix, radice = root  
 rapio-rapere-raptum = seize  
 rarum, rari = rare  
 ratio, rationis = plan, reason  
 recipio-recipient-receptum = take back  
 rectum, recti = straight  
 rego-regere-rectum = rule  
 religio, religionis = religion  
 remedium, remedii = cure  
 renum, reni = kidney  
 reptile, reptilis = crawling  
 repudium, repudii = divorce  
 retro = back, backward  
 revertor-reverti-reversum = turn back  
 rex, regis = king  
 rigeo-rigere = grow hard  
 rubrum, rubri = red  
 rude, rudis = rough, uncultivated  
 rumpo-rumpere-ruptum = break  
 rus, ruris = countryside

**S**

saccus, sacci = purse  
 sacrum, sacri = holy  
 saeculum, saeculi = generation, lifetime  
 sal, salis = salt  
 salax, salacis = lustful  
 salus, salutis = health  
 sanctum, sancti = holy  
 sanguis, sanguinis = blood  
 sanum, sani = healthy  
 scientia, scientiae = knowledge

scio-scire-scitum = know  
 scribe-scribere-scriptum = write  
 sculpo-sculpere-sculptum = form,  
     fashion  
 seneo-senere = be old  
 senesco-senescere = grow old  
 senex, senis = old man  
 sentio-sentire-sensum = feel  
 sequor-sequi-secutum = follow  
 serpo-serpere-serptum = creep  
 servio-servire-servitum = serve  
 servo-servare-servatum = save, protect  
 servus, servi = slave  
 signum, signi = sign, seal  
 silva, silvae = forest  
 simia, simae = monkey  
 sine = without  
 sinistrum, sinistri = on the left  
 situs, situs = site, place  
 socius, socii = ally, companion  
 sol, solis = sun  
 solidum, solidi = firm, dense  
 solus, solius = alone, only  
 solvo-solvere-solutum = loosen  
 somnus, somni = sleep  
 sono-sonare-sonatum = sound  
 sopor, soporis = sleep  
 soror, sororis = sister  
 species, speciei = view, appearance  
 specio-specere = look at  
 specto-spectare-spectatum = observe  
 spero-sperare-speratum = hope  
 spiro-spirare-spiratum = breathe  
 spondeo-spondere-sponsum = promise  
 stella, stellae = star  
 statuo-statuer-statutum = set up, cause  
     to stand  
 sto-stare-statum = stand

stomachus, stomachi = stomach  
 stringo-stringere-strictum = bind,  
     cut off  
 struo-struere-structum = build, arrange  
 studio-studēre = be eager for  
 stupeo-stupēre = be stunned  
 suadeo-suadere-suasum = advise, urge  
 sub = under  
 (sum)-esse-futurum = be, exist  
 summum, summi = highest  
 sumo-sumere-sumptum = obtain, buy  
 super = above  
 superior, superioris = higher  
 supremum, supremi = highest

**T**

tango-tangere-tactum = touch  
 taxo-taxare-taxatum = charge, rate  
 tego-tegere-tectum = cover  
 tempestas, tempestatis = storm  
 templum, templi = temple  
 tempus, temporis = time  
 teneo-tenēre-tentum = hold  
 tergum, tergi = back  
 terra, terrae = earth  
 terreo-terrēre = frighten  
 testor-testari-testatum = witness, show  
 texo-texere-textum = weave  
 tibia, tibiae = flute, shinbone  
 timeo-timēre = be afraid  
 tolero-tolerare-toleratum = bear, carry  
 traho-trahere-tractum = drag  
 tribunus, tribuni = tribune  
 tribuo-tribuere-tributum = give, pay  
 tuba, tubae = trumpet  
 tueor-tuēri-tuitum = watch, protect  
 turba, turbae = crowd  
 turpe, turpis = wicked  
 tutor, tutoris = guardian, protector

**U**

ulterior, ulterioris = further  
 ultimum, ultimi = furthest  
 ultra = beyond  
 urbs, urbis = city  
 ursus, ursi = bear  
 usura, usurae = interest  
 utor-uti-usum = use, employ  
 uxor, uxoris = wife

**V**

vacca, vaccae = cow  
 vaco-vacare-vacatum = be empty  
 valeo-valēre = be strong  
 vapor, vaporis = gas, vapor  
 varium, varii = different  
 vas, vasis = vessel  
 veho-vehere-vectum = carry, drive  
 velox, velocis = rapid  
 vena, venae = vein  
 venio-venire-ventum = come  
 ventus, venti = wind  
 ver, veris = spring  
 verbum, verbi = word  
 verso-versare-versatum = turn, twist  
 verto-vertere-versum = turn  
 verum, veri = true  
 vestigium, vestigii = footprint, trace  
 vestio-vestire-vestitum = dress, cover  
 vestis, vestis = clothing  
 veto-vetare-vetitum = forbid  
 vetus, veteris = old  
 via, viae = road, way  
 vicinia, viciniae = neighborhood  
 video-vidēre-visum = see  
 villa, villae = farmhouse  
 vinco-vincere-victum = conquer  
 vir, viri = man  
 viride, viridis = green



virtus, virtutis = manliness, excellence

virus, viri = poison

vita, vitae = life

vivo-vivere-victum = live

voco-vocare-vocatum = call

volvo-volvere-volutum = turn

voro-vorare-voratum = eat

votum, voti = vow

vox, vocis = voice

vulgus, vulgi = crowd

vulnus, vulneris = wound

# ABOUT THE AUTHOR

**Tamara M. Green** is professor emerita of classics and former chair of the Department of Classical and Oriental Studies at Hunter College of the City University of New York.

